Morse–Bott cohomology from homological perturbation theory

ZHENGYI ZHOU

Morse–Bott cohomology from homological perturbation theory

ZHENGYI ZHOU

We construct cochain complexes generated by the cohomology of critical manifolds in the abstract setup of flow categories for Morse–Bott theories under minimum transversality assumptions. We discuss the relations between different constructions of Morse–Bott theories. In particular, we explain how homological perturbation theory is used in Morse–Bott theories, and both our construction and the cascades construction can be interpreted as applications of homological perturbations. In the presence of group actions, we construct cochain complexes for the equivariant theory. Expected properties like the independence of approximations of classifying spaces and the existence of the action spectral sequence are proven. We carry out our construction for Morse–Bott functions on closed manifolds and prove it recovers the regular cohomology. We outline the project of combining our construction with polyfold theory.

53D40, 57R58

1 Introduction

Morse theory [59] enables one to analyze the topology of a manifold by studying Morse functions on that manifold, or more explicitly by studying critical points and gradient flow lines. Although Morse functions are generic among all differentiable functions, sometimes it is more convenient to work with more special functions. Morse–Bott functions were introduced by Bott in [8] as generalizations of Morse

functions, and have proven to be extremely useful for studying spaces in the presence of symmetries; see Bott [9] and Bott and Samelson [10]. Inspired by ideas of Witten [76] and Gromov [37], Floer generalized Morse theory to various infinite-dimensional settings [27; 28; 29; 30]. Now there are many invariants in symplectic geometry, contact geometry and low-dimensional topology based on Floer's construction. Many of them have a "Morse theoretical" background, eg Dostoglou and Salamon [22], Kronheimer and Mrowka [50], Ozsváth and Szabó [62] and Seidel [70]. Many other invariants (see Eliashberg, Givental and Hofer [23], Fukaya, Oh, Ohta and Ono [34] and Seidel [71]) are closely related to Morse theory. Usually invariants are defined in the "Morse" case, ie critical points are isolated, and invariants or structural maps are defined by counting zero-dimensional moduli spaces. However, often it is more convenient to study the Morse–Bott case, where we need to "count" higher-dimensional moduli spaces, since there are several benefits:

(1) Morse–Bott functions usually reflect some extra symmetries of the problem, and computations in Morse–Bott theory are usually simpler because of the extra symmetries (see Bourgeois [12] and Diogo and Lisi [20]).

(2) Morse–Bott theories appear in equivariant theories; see Austin and Braam [3], Bourgeois and Oancea [14] and Lin [53].

There are two aspects of Morse–Bott theories in applications. First, we need to construct compactified moduli spaces of gradient flow lines/Floer trajectories from one critical manifold to another critical manifold. Moreover, we need the moduli spaces to be equipped with smooth structures so that the moduli spaces are manifolds or orbifolds. To achieve that, there are three main methods:

(1) geometric perturbations (see McDuff and Salamon [56]), where one perturbs geometric data like almost-compact structures or metrics (such methods were used in many classical treatments of Floer theories),

(2) the Kuranishi method (see [34], as well as Joyce [48] and McDuff and Wehrheim [57]),

(3) the polyfold method (see Hofer, Wysocki and Zehnder [44]).

There are many other methods for specific geometric settings (see Cieliebak and Mohnke [17], Ionel and Parker [46], Li and Tian [52] and Ruan and Tian [67]) and algebraic treatments; see Pardon [63]. Second, from critical manifolds and compactified moduli spaces of gradient flow lines/Floer trajectories we need to construct cochain complexes. We focus on the second part. In particular, we explain how to count when the dimension of moduli spaces is positive, assuming the moduli spaces are reasonably nice. However, we will discuss the transversality problem for the finite-dimensional Morse–Bott theory in Section 8 using geometric perturbations, and outline the polyfold method for the general case in Section 9.

1.1 Cohomology of flow categories

It turns out that all critical manifolds and *compactified* moduli spaces from a Morse–Bott setting determine a category, namely a flow category, which was first introduced by Cohen, Jones and Segal in [19] to

organize all the moduli spaces of flow lines in Morse/Floer theories. Roughly speaking, the objects of a flow category come from critical points, and the morphisms are (broken) flow lines.

In the Morse case, the cochain complex is constructed by counting points in the zero-dimensional moduli spaces (the morphism space). However, in a general Morse–Bott case, higher-dimensional moduli spaces should contribute nontrivially to the construction. Given a general abstract Morse–Bott flow category, there are several methods to get a chain or cochain complex:

(1) **Austin and Braam's model** [3]   The cochain complex is generated by differential forms of the critical manifolds, and the differential is defined by the pullback and pushforward of differential forms through the compactified moduli spaces.

(2) **Fukaya's model** [33]   The chain complex is generated by a certain subcomplex of the singular chain complex of the critical manifolds, and the differential is defined by the pushforward and pullback of singular chains through the compactified moduli spaces.

(3) **The cascades model of Bourgeois** [12] **and Frauenfelder** [32]   The cochain complex is generated by Morse cochain complexes of critical manifolds after we assign suitable Morse functions to each critical manifold. The differential is defined by counting "cascades".[1]

All of the methods above have to make some assumptions on the compactified moduli spaces of Morse/Floer trajectories. In the Morse–Bott setting, Morse/Floer trajectories can break into pieces with ends matched. Hence the boundary of a compactified moduli space consists of fiber products over critical manifolds. The minimal transversality requirement is that these fiber products are cut out transversely. Such a requirement is natural using any reasonable virtual technique. We work in the context of flow categories under such fiber products transversality assumptions.

Our first goal is to unify the three methods and provide a simple and clean construction, called the *minimal Morse–Bott construction*, to every Morse–Bott flow category. Moreover, we will explain the following guiding principle in Morse–Bott constructions:

Claim   *Formal applications of the homological perturbation lemma tend to give well-defined constructions.*

It turns out that both cascades and the minimal construction fit into this principle, and the relations are described in the following diagram:
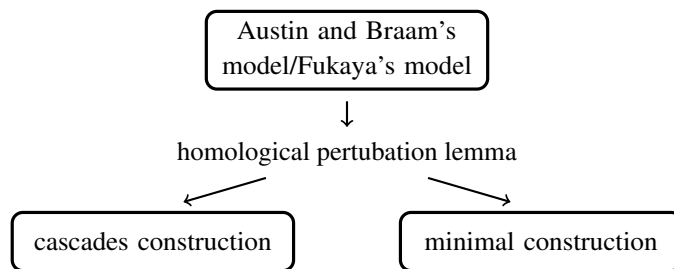
In applications of the homological perturbation theory, one needs to choose some perturbation data (projections and homotopies). For the cascades model, the projections and homotopies are provided by Harvey and Lawson's work [39] on Morse theory. The minimal construction is based on a more direct construction of the projections and homotopies. For example, one can choose the projection to harmonic forms and the associated Green operator (as the homotopy) as the perturbation data. The principle above also works for structures more general than a "linear structure" like flow categories, as long as all the relevant moduli spaces satisfy the fiber products transversality assumption; see eg Cieliebak and Volkov [18]. However, this has gone beyond our scope here.

Our main theorem is that, with suitable orientations, one can associate a well-defined cochain complex generated by the cohomology of the object space (critical manifolds) to a flow category:

Theorem *To every oriented flow category we can assign a minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex* $(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC}})$ *over* $\mathbb{R}$ *generated by the cohomology of the object space (with a suitable completion) in a functorial way.*

Of course, this theorem bears no meaning yet. We point out here that:

(1) When the flow category arises from a Morse–Bott function on a closed manifold, the cohomology of the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex is the cohomology of the manifold.

(2) When the flow category arises from a Morse case (critical points are nondegenerate and hence isolated), the cochain complex is the usual cochain complex with differential defined by counting rigid points in the morphism space.

(3) There are analogous constructions for continuation maps and homotopies, which, in applications, will yield invariance with respect to various auxiliary geometric data (Hamiltonians, almost-complex structures, metrics etc).

The construction provides explicit formulae for how higher-dimensional moduli spaces contribute in the construction; in particular, there are error-correcting terms from moduli spaces related to the boundaries and corners. Like the cascades construction, to write down an explicit cochain complex we need to make some choices on each critical manifold. One of the advantages of the minimal construction is that the choices do not require any compatibility condition with the morphism space (moduli spaces). The cohomology theory on the level of flow categories in this paper simplifies many geometric constructions including products (Section 7.1.1), quotients (Section 7.2.1) and fibrations (Section 6.2.1), as such constructions are natural on the level of flow categories.

The theorem above is the simplest version. We also discuss several generalizations: the critical manifold C_i can be noncompact, the critical manifold C_i can be equipped with local systems and does not have to be orientable, and it is not necessary that the cochain complex is generated by the cohomology, any finite-dimensional subspace of differential forms satisfying a cohomological relation is sufficient. Such flexibility allows us to prove a Gysin exact sequence for sphere bundles over flow categories. In [79], we

use the Gysin exact sequence to show that any exact filling of a simply connected flexibly fillable contact manifold has the same cohomology ring structure on even degrees.

1.2 Equivariant theories

Our second goal is developing an equivariant theory on the level of flow categories, which would serve as a model for defining equivariant Floer theory. When there is a group G symmetry on the Morse–Bott theory, the cohomology theory should be enriched to a G–equivariant theory. One typical method is approximating the homotopy quotient. Bourgeois and Oancea [16] used a construction inspired by the cascades method to define the S^1–equivariant symplectic homology in this spirit. In our case, the homotopy quotient construction is very natural on the level of flow categories. Hence we can combine the Borel construction and our minimal construction, and realize the equivariant cochain complex as a homotopy limit.

Theorem *Assume a compact Lie group G acts on an oriented flow category $\mathcal{C}$ and preserves the orientations. Then there is a cochain complex $(\mathrm{BC}^G, d_{\mathrm{BC}}^G)$, whose homotopy type is unique, ie independent of all the choices in the construction, particularly the choice of finite-dimensional approximations of the classifying space $EG \to BG$.*

1.3 Constructions of flow categories

The remaining obstacle to using the minimal construction in applications is constructing a flow category. In Section 8, we construct flow categories for the finite-dimensional Morse–Bott theory using geometric methods. In general, geometric perturbations (perturbing metrics in Morse theory and perturbing almost-complex structures in Floer theory), may not be enough to guarantee the transversality assumption, and hence one needs to apply some abstract perturbations. In fact, our minimal construction is applicable to polyfold theory. We can enrich a flow category (a system of manifolds) to a system of polyfolds with sc–Fredholm sections, and the boundaries/corners of the polyfolds come from transverse fiber products of polyfolds. We will refer this system as a polyflow category. Then we can find a coherent perturbation scheme and apply the abstract perturbation theorem for polyfolds of Hofer, Wysocki and Zehnder [44] to get a flow category. In the presence of a group action, the theorem above on equivariant cohomology requires G–equivariant transversality. But we know that G–equivariant transversality is typically obstructed. In general, we need to apply the Borel construction using quotient theorems of Zhou [78] to the whole polyflow category instead of the flow category.

Organization

Section 2 discusses the motivation of the minimal construction from homological perturbation theory and interprets the cascades construction as an example of an application of the homological perturbation theory. Section 3 defines the minimal cochain complex, as well as continuation maps and homotopies explicitly, and proves that they satisfy the desired properties. Section 4 discusses the action spectral sequence.

Section 5 explains how the orientations used in Section 3 arise in Morse/Floer theories. Section 5 also generalizes the construction to the case with local systems and nonorientable manifolds. Section 6 generalizes the construction to flow categories with noncompact critical manifolds, and also provides a more general setup which allows us to prove statements like the Gysin exact sequence. Section 7 discusses the equivariant theory. Section 8 is devoted to the Morse–Bott theory on finite-dimensional manifolds (both open and closed) and proves that the minimal construction recovers the cohomology of the underlying manifold. Section 9 outlines the project of combining our construction with polyfold theory.

Acknowledgements

2 Motivation from homological perturbation theory

2.1 Differential topology notation

We first set up some notation and transversality theory for manifolds with boundaries and corners, and orientation conventions.

2.1.1 Manifolds and submanifolds with boundaries and corners   Unless stated otherwise, all manifolds we consider are manifolds possibly with boundaries and corners [58, Definition 1.6.1], ie for every point in the manifold there is an open neighborhood diffeomorphic to an open subset of $\mathbb{R}^n_+$, where $\mathbb{R}_+ := [0, \infty)$. A *closed* manifold is a *compact* manifold *without boundary*.

Definition 2.1   Let M be a manifold and $x \in M$ a point. Choosing a chart $\phi: \mathbb{R}^n_+ \supset U \to M$ near $x \in M$, the degeneracy index $d(x)$ of the point x is defined to be $\#\{v_i \mid v_i = 0\}$, where $(v_1, \ldots, v_n) \in \mathbb{R}^n_+$ and $\phi(v_1, \ldots, v_n) = x \in M$.

The degeneracy index d does not depend on the local chart ϕ [58, Corollary 1.5.1]. For $i \geq 0$, we define the *depth-i boundary* $\partial_i M$ to be

$$(2\text{-}1) \qquad\qquad \partial_i M := \{x \in M \mid d(x) = i\}.$$

Then $\partial_0 M$ is the set of interior points of M. Note that all $\partial_i M$ are manifolds without boundary, and in most cases they are noncompact. Submanifolds of manifolds should be compatible with structures defined in (2-1):

Definition 2.2 A closed subset $N \subset M$ is a submanifold of M if and only if N is a manifold such that the inclusion $N \to M$ is a smooth embedding and, for all $i \geq 0$, we have $\partial_i N = N \cap \partial_i M$. In other words, (M, N) near x is locally modeled on $(\mathbb{R}^k_+ \times \mathbb{R}^{n-k}, \mathbb{R}^k_+ \times \mathbb{R}^{n-m} \times \{0\}^{m-k})$ near 0 for every $x \in N$.

An instant corollary is that if N is submanifold of M and M is submanifold of K, then N is also a submanifold of K. Unless stated otherwise, we will only consider submanifolds defined as above. In particular, when M has no boundary, a submanifold does not have boundary either. Note that $\partial_i M$ is not a submanifold of M in the sense of Definition 2.2 unless dim $M = 0$.

Remark 2.3 (1) Some authors require, in the definition of manifolds with boundaries and corners, the additional property that faces (the closure of connected components of $\partial_1 M$) are submanifolds (not in the sense of Definition 2.2 but a weaker sense, eg t–submanifolds in [58, Definition 1.7.3]); for example, [58, Definition 1.8.5]. Such a definition will rule out the "teardrop" shape. Although we do not use this definition, we note here that in Floer/Morse cohomology theories, which are the main applications of our abstract construction, the compactified moduli spaces of Floer/Morse trajectories are manifolds with boundaries and corners in this stronger sense. However, if we were to consider more general algebraic structures (more complicated than a cochain complex) arising from the compactified moduli spaces of pseudoholomorphic curves, a "teardrop" moduli space may appear; see for example [64, Figure 8].

(2) There are different notions of submanifolds in a manifold with boundaries and corners depending on the purpose. For example, there are notions of t–, d–, and p–submanifolds [58, Section 1.7] depending on the compatibility of tangent spaces at the boundary. However, our notion of submanifolds is stronger than any of that, as we require that $l = k$ in the definition of p–submanifolds [58, Definition 1.7.4]. This is equivalent to requiring that (M, N) near x is locally modeled on $(\mathbb{R}^k_+ \times \mathbb{R}^{n-k}, \mathbb{R}^k_+ \times \mathbb{R}^{n-m} \times \{0\}^{m-k})$ near 0 for $x \in N$.

(3) Submanifolds in the sense of Definition 2.2 arise naturally as zero sets of sections $s : M \to E$ of a vector bundle E over a manifold M with boundaries and corners, if $s|_{\partial_i M}$ is transverse to 0 for all i. This can be viewed as a prototype of how compactified moduli spaces of Floer cylinders/holomorphic curves can be equipped with the structure of a manifold with boundaries and corners in the polyfold perspective. The transversality requirements above are equivalent to s being in general position [44, Definition 5.3.9].

Definition 2.4 Transversality is defined as follows, to accommodate the boundary and corner structures:

(1) Let C be a manifold *without boundary*, B a submanifold of C and M a manifold possibly with boundaries and corners. A smooth map $f : M \to C$ is *transverse to B* if and only if $f|_{\partial_i M} \pitchfork B$ for all i in the classical sense, ie $\mathrm{D}f_x(T\partial_i M) + T_{f(x)}B = T_{f(x)}C$ for all $x \in \partial_i M$ such that $f(x) \in B$.

(2) Let M be a manifold, and N_1 and N_2 two submanifolds. Then we say N_1 *is transverse to N_2* if and only if, for all $i \geq 0$ and every $x \in \partial_i N_1 \cap \partial_i N_2$, we have that $\partial_i N_1$ is transverse to $\partial_i N_2$ in $\partial_i M$ in the classical sense, ie $T_x \partial_i N_1 + T_x \partial_i N_2 = T_x \partial_i M$.

Proposition 2.5 *We have the following implicit function theorems*:

(1) *Let C be a manifold* **without boundary** *and B be a submanifold. Given a manifold M along with a smooth map f, assume that $f : M \to C$ is transverse to B in the sense of* Definition 2.4(1). *Then $f^{-1}(B)$ is a submanifold of M* (*in the sense of* Definition 2.2).

(2) *Let N_1 and N_2 be two submanifolds of a manifold M such that N_1 is transverse to N_2 in the sense of* Definition 2.4(2). *Then $N_1 \cap N_2$ is a submanifold of M. The codimension of $N_1 \cap N_2$ is the sum of the codimensions of N_1 and N_2.*

Proof The first claim is standard. We sketch a proof of the second claim using the first claim (but not the "obvious" one, as we cannot assume $C = M$ and $B = N_2$ in the first claim since M and N_2 have nonempty boundaries). Let $x \in N_2$ with $d(x) = k$; we may assume the pair $(M, N_2, x) \cap U$, for an open set $U \subset M$, is modeled on $(\mathbb{R}_+^k \times \mathbb{R}^{n-k}, \mathbb{R}_+^k \times \mathbb{R}^{m-k} \times \{0\}^{n-m}, 0)$, following Remark 2.3. We consider $f : N_1 \cap U \to \mathbb{R}^{n-m}$, the projection to the last $n - m$ coordinates. It is straightforward to check that transversality in Definition 2.4(2) implies (and is actually equivalent to) that 0 is a regular value of f. Since $f^{-1}(0) = N_1 \cap N_2 \cap U$, we endow $N_1 \cap N_2$ with the structure of submanifold with boundaries and corners in N_1 by the first claim, and hence the structure of submanifold with boundaries and corners in M. $\square$

Since measure-zero sets on differentiable manifolds are well defined and our construction is based on integration, errors over a measure-zero set can be tolerated. In particular, we have the following useful notion:

Definition 2.6 Let M and N be two manifolds. A smooth map $f : M \to N$ is a *diffeomorphism up to zero-measure* if and only if there exist measure-zero closed sets $M_1 \subset M$ and $N_1 \subset N$ such that $f|_{M \setminus M_1} : M \setminus M_1 \to N \setminus N_1$ is a diffeomorphism.

2.1.2 Orientations Given an *oriented* vector bundle E over a manifold M, the determinant bundle $\det E$ is a trivial line bundle, which can be reduced further to a trivial $\mathbb{Z}/2$–bundle $\operatorname{sign} E$. Moreover, we can assign to $\operatorname{sign} E$ a $\mathbb{Z}/2$ grading $|\operatorname{sign} E| = \operatorname{rank} E$. The fiber of $\operatorname{sign} E$ over $x \in M$ is the set of equivalence classes of ordered bases $[(e_1, \ldots, e_n)]$ of the fiber E_x, where $(e_1, \ldots, e_n)$ is equivalent to $(e_1', \ldots, e_n')$ if and only if the transformation matrix between them has positive determinant. Then the orientation of E induces a continuous section of $\operatorname{sign} E$, and we use $[E] \in \Gamma(\operatorname{sign} E)$ to denote the section induced by the orientation.

Given two vector bundles E and F over M, we fix a bundle isomorphism:

$$m_{E,F} : \operatorname{sign}(E) \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}/2} \operatorname{sign}(F) \to \operatorname{sign}(E \oplus F),$$
$$[(e_1, \ldots, e_n)] \otimes [(f_1, \ldots, f_m)] \mapsto [(e_1, \ldots, e_n, f_1, \ldots, f_m)].$$

Therefore orientations $[E]$ and $[F]$ determine an orientation of $E \oplus F$ through $m_{E,F}$, and hence we denote the induced orientation by

$$(2\text{-}2) \qquad\qquad [E][F] := m_{E,F}([E], [F]).$$

Since $[(e_1, \ldots, e_n, f_1, \ldots, f_m)] = (-1)^{nm}[(f_1, \ldots, f_m, e_1, \ldots, e_n)]$, we have

$$[E][F] = (-1)^{|F||E|}[F][E].$$

Definition 2.7 For simplicity of notation, we introduce the following:

• A manifold M is oriented if and only if the tangent bundle TM is oriented, and we use $[M]$ to denote the orientation.

• $\partial[M]$ denotes the induced orientation (in the usual sense, so that Stokes' theorem holds without extra sign) on the depth-1 boundary $\partial_1 M$ for an oriented manifold M.

• Let $E \to M$ and $F \to N$ be two oriented vector bundles. We use $[E] + [F]$ to denote the induced orientation on $E \cup F \to M \cup N$, and $-[E]$ to denote the opposite orientation.

• Unless stated otherwise, the product $M \times N$ is oriented by the product orientation of M and N, and we use $[M \times N]$ to denote the product orientation. Then

$$(2\text{-}3) \qquad \partial[M \times N] = \partial[M] \times [N] + (-1)^{\dim M}[M] \times \partial[N].$$

• If $f : M \to N$ is a diffeomorphism, we use $f_*[M]$ as the orientation on N induced by $Df : TM \to TN$ and $[M]$.

• Let $E \to N$ be an oriented vector bundle and $f : M \to N$ a smooth map. Then the bundle map $f^*E \to E$ induces a bundle map $\text{sign}(f^*E) \to \text{sign}(E)$. Through this map, the orientation $[E]$ induces an orientation on f^*E over M; the induced orientation is denoted by $f^*[E]$.

Example 2.8 Let C be a closed oriented manifold. We now explain our orientation convention for the normal bundle N of the diagonal $\Delta \subset C \times C = C_1 \times C_2$ using the notation introduced in Definition 2.7: Δ is oriented by the condition[2] $\pi_{1*}[\Delta] = [C_1]$, where $\pi_1 : C_1 \times C_2 \to C_1$ is the projection. Then there exists a unique orientation of N such that, when restricted to Δ, we have

$$[\Delta][N] = [TC_1][TC_2]|_\Delta.$$

For simplicity, we suppress the restrictions and the subscripts,[3] and the equation becomes

$$(2\text{-}4) \qquad [\Delta][N] = [C][C] \quad \text{or equivalently} \quad [N][\Delta] = (-1)^{(\dim C)^2}[C][C].$$

This determines our orientation convention for the normal bundle N.

2.2 Flow categories

Flow categories was introduced by Cohen, Jones and Segal [19] to organize the moduli spaces in Floer (co)homology, and were used to construct a stable homotopy type for Floer theories. Our construction will be based on the concept of flow categories, and hence we recall the definition first:

Definition 2.9 A *flow category* is a small category $\mathcal{C}$ with the following properties:

---

[2]This condition is equivalent to $\pi_{2*}[\Delta] = [C_2]$.

[3]We will never switch the order of the two copies of C.

(1)   The object space $\mathrm{Obj}(\mathcal{C}) = \bigsqcup_{i \in \mathbb{Z}} C_i$ is a disjoint union of *closed* manifolds C_i, ie C_i is a compact manifold without boundary. The morphism space $\mathrm{Mor}(\mathcal{C}) = \mathcal{M}$ is a manifold. The source and target maps $s, t \colon \mathcal{M} \to C$ are smooth.

(2)   Let $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ denote $(s \times t)^{-1}(C_i \times C_j)$. Then $\mathcal{M}_{i,i} = C_i$, corresponding to the identity morphisms, and s and t restricted to $\mathcal{M}_{i,i}$ are identities. $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} = \varnothing$ for $j < i$, and $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ is a *compact* manifold for $j > i$.

(3)   Let $s_{i,j}$ and $t_{i,j}$ denote $s|_{\mathcal{M}_{i,j}}$ and $t|_{\mathcal{M}_{i,j}}$. For every strictly increasing sequence $i_0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_k$,
$$t_{i_0,i_1} \times s_{i_1,i_2} \times t_{i_1,i_2} \times \cdots \times s_{i_{k-1},i_k} \colon \mathcal{M}_{i_0,i_1} \times \mathcal{M}_{i_1,i_2} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{M}_{i_{k-1},i_k} \to C_{i_1} \times C_{i_1} \times C_{i_2} \times C_{i_2} \times \cdots \times C_{i_{k-1}} \times C_{i_{k-1}}$$
is transverse to the submanifold $\Delta_{i_1} \times \cdots \times \Delta_{i_{k-1}}$ in the sense of Definition 2.4. Therefore the fiber product
$$\mathcal{M}_{i_0,i_1} \times_{i_1} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,i_2} \times_{i_2} \cdots \times_{i_{k-1}} \mathcal{M}_{i_{k-1},i_k}$$
$$:= (t_{i_0,i_1} \times s_{i_1,i_2} \times t_{i_1,i_2} \times \cdots \times s_{i_{k-1},i_k})^{-1}(\Delta_{i_1} \times \Delta_{i_2} \times \cdots \times \Delta_{i_{k-1}}) \subset \mathcal{M}_{i_0,i_1} \times \mathcal{M}_{i_1,i_2} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{M}_{i_{k-1},i_k}$$
is a submanifold by Proposition 2.5.

(4)   The composition $m \colon \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \to \mathcal{M}_{i,k}$ is a smooth map such that
$$m \colon \bigsqcup_{i < j < k} \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \to \partial \mathcal{M}_{i,k}$$
is a diffeomorphism up to zero-measure.

Example 2.10   Fix a Morse–Bott function f on a closed manifold M. Then there are finitely many critical values $v_1 < \cdots < v_n$. Let C_i denote the critical manifold corresponding to the critical value v_i, and $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ the *compactified* moduli space of *unparametrized gradient flow lines* from C_i to C_j. Since the function value increases along a gradient flow line, $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} = \varnothing$ when $i > j$. The source map $s \colon \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \to C_i$ and target map $t \colon \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \to C_j$ are defined to be the evaluation maps at the negative/positive ends of the flow line in $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$. The composition map m is the concatenation of flow lines. It's a folklore theorem that the $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ are smooth manifolds with boundaries and corners if one chooses a suitable metric; see [3; 33] and Section 8. Therefore $\{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$ forms a flow category. We emphasize here that the subscript i in C_i has nothing to do with Morse–Bott indices. Similar constructions also exist in Floer theories, as long as there is a background "Morse–Bott" functional and all the transversality conditions are met. For example, [19] gives an explicit construction of the flow category for the Hamiltonian Floer cohomology theory on $\mathbb{CP}^n$, where the background Morse–Bott functional is the symplectic action functional with the Hamiltonian[4] $H = 0$. There are also flow categories without obvious background Morse–Bott functionals, for example, the flow category for Khovanov homology [54].

We associate a natural cochain complex to each (oriented) flow category in a functorial way. The main application would be defining Hamiltonian–Floer cohomology or Morse cohomology under Morse–Bott nondegenerate conditions. Although we will be discussing the *abstract notion of flow categories*, it would be helpful to keep Example 2.10 in mind. In view of this, with a bit abuse of notation, we will refer to elements of $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ as Morse (or Floer) trajectories from C_i to C_j. Inspired by Example 2.10,

---

[4][19] used homological convention, which gave the opposite category of a flow category in the sense of Definition 2.9.

Definition 2.9(2) is usually the consequence of the existence of some background functional, and the morphism space $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ is the *compactified* moduli space of "gradient flow lines",[5] that is, the space of possibly broken "gradient flow lines". Definition 2.9(3) is necessary for the smoothness of the composition map m. Roughly speaking, Definition 2.9(4) requires that the boundary of the morphism space is the space of nontrivial compositions of morphisms, although it is only about an essential portion of the correspondence. In applications, we can stratify $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ in a cell-like manner by a poset similar to the construction in [64] such that m respects the structure, but we will not need that level of precision here.

Remark 2.11 (1) A flow category is called *Morse* if C is a discrete set. Then the fiber product transversality becomes tautological, and it recovers the definition of a flow category in [19], up to taking the opposite category.

(2) In the context of Floer theories, the moduli spaces may not be manifolds in general, but instead some weighted objects with local symmetries, eg weighted branched orbifolds in [42]. All of our arguments hold for weighted branched orbifolds, since there is a well-behaved integration theory with Stokes' theorem [43].

(3) When the flow category comes from a Morse–Bott functional f, but f is not single valued,[6] we need to lift f to $\tilde{f}$ over the cyclic cover [19] to guarantee Definition 2.9(2). Such modification was already reflected in the usual construction by introducing the Novikov coefficient.

(4) In Definition 2.9, we require C_i to be compact and without boundary. However, the compactness assumption can be dropped: C_i could be a disjoint union of infinitely many closed manifolds or C_i could have noncompact components.[7] In such generalizations, compactness of $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ can be weakened to requiring that the target maps $t\colon M_{i,j} \to C_j$ are proper;[8] see Section 6.1 for details.

(5) For a background Morse–Bott function f, sometimes it is impossible to partition the critical manifolds by $\mathbb{Z}$ and in the order of increasing critical values; critical values may accumulate. For example, Hamiltonian Floer cohomology with Novikov coefficients will have this problem if the symplectic form is irrational. However, Gromov compactness for the Hamiltonian Floer equation implies that there is an action gap $\hbar$ such that there are no nonconstant flow lines when the action difference (energy) is smaller than $\hbar$. Therefore we can still divide all the critical manifolds into groups indexed by $\mathbb{Z}$ so that there are no nonconstant flow lines inside each group. Then the flow category can still be defined using the generalization in (4).

(6) We will mostly work with oriented C_i; see Definition 2.15. This assumption can be dropped at the price of working with local systems. We discuss this generalization in Section 5.

(7) The requirement of the partition of $\mathrm{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$ by $\mathbb{Z}$ is not necessary. We can certainly work with $\mathrm{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$ indexed by any set I, as long as we require that $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ has only finitely many degenerations for any

---

[5]It could be Floer flow lines, which, strictly speaking, are not gradient flow lines.

[6]For example, Hamiltonian Floer cohomology on (M, ω) with $\omega|_{\pi_2(M)} \neq 0$ has this property.

[7]But those noncompact manifolds should have finite topology; see Section 6.1 for details.

[8]One can instead ask $s\colon M_{i,j} \to C_i$ to be proper, but this will result in a theory analogous to the compactly supported cohomology.

$i, j \in I$, and the finite set of degeneration configurations is equipped with a partial order, whose minimum elements are built from $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ without boundary. This is precisely the setup in [63, Section 7], and is satisfied by more general constructions in [64]. When $\mathrm{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$ is indexed by $\mathbb{Z}$ with the properties in Definition 2.9, the set of degeneration configurations of $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ is precisely the set of strictly increasing sequences $S := \{i < \cdots < j\}$, where the partial order is given by $S_1 \le S_2$ if and only if $S_2 \subset S_1$. Then the minimum element is $\{i < i+1 < \cdots < j-1 < j\}$, which corresponds to the fiber product of manifolds $\mathcal{M}_{*,*+1}$ without boundary. However, this level of generalization does not add much to the applications we have in mind, and hence we choose to work with the more down-to-earth version (Definition 2.9) to avoid more complication in notation.

Flow categories can be equipped with extra structures. For our construction, the most relevant structures are gradings and orientations. Given a flow category $\mathcal{C} = \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$, for simplicity of notation, *we assume through out this paper that* $\dim \mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ *and* $\dim C_i$ *are well defined*. This requirement usually holds when each C_i has one component.

Remark 2.12 When $\dim C_i$ and $\dim \mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ are not well defined, then we need to work componentwise. For example, if a function f in Example 2.10 is Morse and C_i contains critical points of different Morse indices, then $\mathcal{M}_{i,i+1}$ has multiple connected components of different dimension. This generalization only results in complexity of notation; it is straightforward to see that our proofs still hold, and they can be viewed as formulae on one component.

Let $m_{i,j} := \dim \mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ for $i < j$ and $c_i := \dim C_i$. We formally define $m_{i,i} := c_i - 1$. By Definition 2.9(3) and (4) and Proposition 2.5, $t_{i,j} \times s_{j,k} \colon \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \to C_j \times C_j$ is transverse to Δ_j and an open dense part of $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}$ can be identified with part of the boundary of $\mathcal{M}_{i,k}$. Then

(2-5)
$$m_{i,j} + m_{j,k} - c_j + 1 = m_{i,k} \quad \text{for all } i \le j \le k.$$

Definition 2.13 A flow category is *graded* if there is an integer d_i such that $d_i = d_j + c_j - m_{i,j} - 1$ for each $i \in \mathbb{Z}$ and all $i < j$. We will refer to $\{d_i\}$ as the grading structure.[9] Similarly, we define a $\mathbb{Z}/k$ grading structure if $d_i \in \mathbb{Z}/k$ and the relation holds in $\mathbb{Z}/k$.

Remark 2.14 The $\mathbb{Z}/k$ grading structure on a flow category is used to equip the Morse–Bott cochain complex with a $\mathbb{Z}/k$ grading. In the finite-dimensional Morse–Bott theory, a $\mathbb{Z}$ grading structure exists, ie d_i can be the dimension of the negative eigenspace of $\mathrm{Hess}(f)$ on C_i. For Hamiltonian Floer cohomology, a $\mathbb{Z}/2$ grading structure always exists and a $\mathbb{Z}$ grading structure exists if the first Chern class of the symplectic manifold vanishes; then d_i is related to the generalized Conley–Zehnder index [66].

Next, we define orientations on a flow category. Since $t_{i,j} \times s_{j,k} \colon \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \to C_j \times C_j$ is transverse to the diagonal Δ_j, the pullback $(t_{i,j} \times s_{j,k})^* N_j$ of the normal bundle N_j of Δ_j by $t_{i,j} \times s_{j,k}$ is the normal

---

[9]When $\dim M_{i,j}$ or $\dim C_i$ are not well defined, a grading is an assignment of integers to each component of C_i satisfying similar relations.

bundle of $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k} := (t_{i,j} \times s_{j,k})^{-1}(\Delta_j)$ in $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times \mathcal{M}_{j,k}$. If N_j is oriented, then we can pull back this orientation to orient the normal bundle of $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}$. We define a coherent orientation on a flow category as follows:

Definition 2.15 A *coherent orientation* on a flow category is an assignment of orientations for each C_i, $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ and $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}$ such that:

(1) The normal bundle N_i of $\Delta_i \subset C_i \times C_i$ is oriented by $[N_i][\Delta_i] = (-1)^{c_i^2}[C_i][C_i]$, as in Example 2.8.

(2) $(t_{i,j} \times s_{j,k})^*[N_j][\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}] = (-1)^{c_j m_{i,j}}[\mathcal{M}_{i,j}][\mathcal{M}_{j,k}]$.

(3) $\partial[\mathcal{M}_{i,k}] = \sum_j (-1)^{m_{i,j}} m([\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}])$.

More precisely, (3) holds on where m is a diffeomorphism. One can combine (2) and (3) as

$$(t_{i,j} \times s_{j,k})^*[N_j] m^{-1}(\partial[\mathcal{M}_{i,k}]|_{m(\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k})}) = (-1)^{(c_j+1)m_{i,j}}[\mathcal{M}_{i,j}][\mathcal{M}_{j,k}].$$

Remark 2.16 Orientation conventions are by no means unique; however they typically differ by a global change. For example, in the context of Morse theory, Definition 3.3 differs from [65] by an opposite sign on the orientation of every $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$. Although our orientation conventions for fiber products are different from [47], our conventions also enjoy the associativity property [47, Proposition 7.5(a)], and hence the uniqueness property in [47, Remark 7.6(iii)] holds.

We will discuss how coherent orientations arise in applications in Section 5.1. When the flow category is oriented as in Definition 2.15, we have the following form of Stokes' theorem:

$$\int_{\mathcal{M}_{i,k}} d\alpha = \sum_{i<j<k} (-1)^{m_{i,j}} \int_{\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}} m^*\alpha.$$

Suppose that $\alpha \in \Omega^*(C_i)$, $\beta \in \Omega^*(C_k)$ and $i < j < k$. Because $s_{i,k} \circ m|_{\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}} = s_{i,j} \circ \pi_1$ and $t_{i,k} \circ m|_{\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}} = t_{j,k} \circ \pi_2$, where π_1 and π_2 are natural projections, we have

$$(2\text{-}6) \quad \int_{m(\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k})} s_{i,k}^*\alpha \wedge t_{i,k}^*\beta = \int_{\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}} m^* s_{i,k}^*\alpha \wedge m^* t_{i,k}^*\beta = \int_{\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}} \pi_1^* s_{i,j}^*\alpha \wedge \pi_2^* t_{j,k}^*\beta.$$

Since we will only consider pullbacks of forms by source and target maps, it is convenient to think of $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}$ as contained in $\partial \mathcal{M}_{i,k}$, and suppress the composition map m.

2.2.1 Conventions for cochain complexes In a typical homological algebra textbook, for example [75], a cochain complex is $\mathbb{Z}$ graded or $\mathbb{Z}/k$ graded for $k \geq 2$. As mentioned in Remark 2.14, the grading of the Morse–Bott cochain complex is a consequence of the grading structure in Definition 2.13, which is an extra piece of data on flow categories. Although the applications in our mind always have at least a $\mathbb{Z}/2$ grading structure, we will not assume this, and only work with Definition 2.9. As a result, our cochain complex is simply a vector space C with an operator $d : C \to C$ such that $d^2 = 0$. Then the cohomology $H(C, d)$ is defined as $\ker d/\operatorname{im} d$. The definitions of cochain maps and homotopies are similar and have the usual properties. It is clear that by forgetting the grading on a $\mathbb{Z}/k$ graded cochain complex we get a cochain complex in the above sense. Many basic properties in homological algebra survive for ungraded

cochain complexes, eg the spectral sequence from a filtration, the exact triangle[10] from a short exact sequence, the mapping cone and mapping cylinder constructions.

2.3 Review of existing constructions

Throughout this subsection we fix a flow category $\mathcal{C} := \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$ such that there are finitely many nonempty C_i, for simplicity (for example, one can take the flow category from Example 2.10). Before giving our construction of the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex in Section 3.2, we review the three constructions in the existing literature: Austin and Braam's pull–push construction, Fukaya's push–pull construction and the cascades construction. For simplicity, we completely neglect the issue of signs[11] and orientations.

2.3.1 Austin and Braam's Morse–Bott cochain complex $(\mathrm{BC}^{\mathrm{AB}}, d^{\mathrm{AB}})$

Austin and Braam [3] defined the Morse–Bott cochain complex of a flow category to be

$$\left(\mathrm{BC}^{\mathrm{AB}} := \bigoplus_i \Omega^*(C_i), d^{\mathrm{AB}}\right),$$

where $\Omega^*(C_i) = \bigoplus_{j=0}^{\dim C_i} \Omega^j(C_i)$ is the space of differential forms on C_i. The differential d^{AB} is defined as $\sum_{k \geq 0} d_k$, where d_k is defined by

(2-7)
$$d_0 = \mathrm{d} \colon \Omega^*(C_i) \to \Omega^*(C_i),$$
$$d_k \colon \Omega^*(C_i) \to \mathcal{D}^*(C_{i+k}) \quad \text{given by } \alpha \mapsto t_{i,i+k\,*} \circ s_{i,i+k}^*(\alpha) \text{ for } k \geq 1,$$

where d is the usual exterior differential on differential forms. Here $\mathcal{D}^*(C)$ is the space of currents on C. The operator d_k taking values in $\mathcal{D}^*(C)$ instead of $\Omega^*(C)$ causes difficulties getting a well-defined *ungraded* cochain complex $(\mathrm{BC}^{\mathrm{AB}}, d^{\mathrm{AB}})$. Thus, to make it well-defined, the target maps $t_{i,j}$ are assumed to be fibrations in Austin and Braam's model. Under such assumptions, $t_{i,j\,*}$ is integration along the fiber, and hence d_k actually lands in $\Omega^*(C_{i+k})$. However, it was noticed in [51, Remark 2.4] that the fibration condition is obstructed for some Morse–Bott functions. That is, there exists a Morse Bott function f such that the fibration property fails for all metrics.

Remark 2.17 An equivalent form of the fibration condition was studied by Banyaga and Hurtubise under the name *the Morse–Bott–Smale condition* [4, Definition 3.4]. More precisely, let ϕ_t be the gradient flow of f. The Morse–Bott–Smale condition holds if and only if the unstable manifold $U(C_i) = \{x \mid x \in M \text{ and } \lim_{t \to -\infty} \phi_t(x) \in C_i\}$ and the stable manifold $S(p) = \{x \mid x \in M \text{ and } \lim_{t \to \infty} \phi_t(x) = p\}$ for $p \in C_j$ intersect transversely[12] for all C_i, C_j and $p \in C_j$. Note that $(U(C_i) \cap S(p))/\mathbb{R}$ is the intersection

---

[10]When we have a $\mathbb{Z}$ grading, the exact triangle is a long exact sequence.

[11]For curious readers who would like to verify those constructions, we point out that Austin and Braam [3] have incorrect orientations and signs. Although our construction is motivated by theirs, we will not appeal to any of their specific formulae in our proofs.

[12]Note that we use (un)stable manifolds of the *positive* gradient flow; this explains the discrepancy with [4, Definition 3.4].

of the preimage $t_{i,j}^{-1}(p)$ with the open stratum of $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ (the space of unbroken flow lines); it is easy to check that $U(C_i)$ is transverse to $S(p)$ if and only if p is a regular value of $t_{i,j}$ restricted to the open stratum. In particular, the fibration condition implies the Morse–Bott–Smale condition. On the other hand, the Morse–Bott–Smale condition implies the fibration condition by [4, Corollary 5.20] and Ehresmann's theorem. Latschev introduced another even stronger condition [51, Definition 2.3] to make sure the generalization of Harvey and Lawson's method [39] works in the context of Morse–Bott functions. The existence of a flow category only requires that $U(C_i)$ and $S(C_j)$ — the stable manifold of C_j — intersect transversely, and the iterated source and target maps from these transverse intersections are transverse for all i and j; see Section 8 (this holds automatically when the Morse–Bott–Smale condition holds). We refer to such a pair (f, g) of a function and a metric as a *Morse–Bott–Smale pair* in Section 8. It is important to note that the *Morse–Bott–Smale pair* condition is much weaker than the *Morse–Bott–Smale condition* (namely transversality vs pointwise transversality in a family). Moreover, Morse–Bott–Smale pairs always exist. In particular, there is a metric for Latschev's example that forms a Morse–Bott–Smale pair.

Remark 2.18 One way to get the fibration property is to fatten up all moduli spaces systematically; a construction in this spirit was carried out in [35] using CF–perturbations.

Remark 2.19 The Austin–Braam cochain complex $(\mathrm{BC}^{\mathrm{AB}}, d^{\mathrm{AB}})$ explained here is ungraded. However, we can grade $\alpha \in \Omega^j(C_i)$ by $j + d_i$, where d_i the dimension of the negative eigenspace of $\mathrm{Hess}(f)$ on C_i, (the grading structure in Remark 2.14). Then $(\mathrm{BC}^{\mathrm{AB}}, d^{\mathrm{AB}})$ is graded by $\mathbb{Z}$ and the degree of d^{AB} is 1. It is clear that $\mathrm{BC}^{\mathrm{AB}}$ is equipped with an (action) filtration $F_i := \bigoplus_{j=i}^{\infty} \Omega^*(C_j) \subset F_{i-1}$ compatible with the differential, which induces a spectral sequence. This structure does not depend on the grading and always exists for all flow categories; we will discuss the induced spectral sequence in Section 4. On the other hand, if there is a $\mathbb{Z}$ grading structure then the cochain complex has the structure of a multicomplex studied in [45], which can decompose the spectral sequence further by the grading.

2.3.2 Fukaya's Morse–Bott chain complex Fukaya [33] used "singular" chains of critical manifolds to model the *homology* of the manifold for the flow category in Example 2.10, and the Austin–Braam model can be viewed as the dual of Fukaya's model. The chain complex is defined to be

$$\left(\mathrm{BC}^{\mathrm{F}} := \bigoplus_i C_*(C_i), \partial^{\mathrm{F}} \right).$$

Here $C_*(C_i)$ is the space of singular chains on C_i and $\partial^{\mathrm{F}} := \sum_{k \geq 0} \partial_k$, with ∂_k defined by

$$\partial_0 = \partial \colon C_*(C_i) \to C_*(C_i),$$

$$\partial_k \colon C_*(C_{i+k}) \to C_*(C_i) \quad \text{given by } P \mapsto s_{i,i+k*} \circ t_{i,i+k}^*(P) \text{ for } k \geq 1,$$

where ∂ is the usual boundary operator on singular chains. Now pushforward is well defined. Pullback is defined as follows. Let $P \colon \Delta \to C_{i+k}$ be a singular chain and assume the fiber product $\Delta \times_{C_{i+k}} \mathcal{M}_{i,i+k}$

is cut out transversely in the sense of Definition 2.4, and hence is a manifold with boundaries and corners. Then the projection to the second factor,[13]

$$\pi_{\mathcal{M}_{i,i+k}} \colon \Delta \times_{C_{i+k}} \mathcal{M}_{i,i+k} \to \mathcal{M}_{i,i+k},$$

is defined to be the pullback $t^*_{i,i+k}(P)$.

To guarantee this pullback is well defined for all singular chains in C_{i+k}, one also needs to assume the target map $t_{i,i+k}$ is a fibration. To drop this constraint, Fukaya constructed a quasi-isomorphic subset $C_{\mathrm{geo}}(C_i) \subset C_*(C_i)$ such that the fiber products in the definition of pullbacks are defined over $C_{\mathrm{geo}}(C_i)$ and the operators ∂_k are closed on $C_{\mathrm{geo}}(C_i)$. Then $\left(\bigoplus_i C_{\mathrm{geo}}(C_i), \sum_{k \geq 0} \partial_k \right)$ defines a chain complex. It is important to note that the construction of $C_{\mathrm{geo}}(C_i)$ depends on $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$, $s_{i,j}$ and $t_{i,j}$.

2.3.3 The cascades model The cascades construction was first introduced by Bourgeois [12] and Frauenfelder [32]. In the following, we review their constructions, but in the cohomology context to align with Austin and Braam's construction. For each C_i, we choose a Morse–Smale pair (f_i, g_i).[14] Then the cascade cochain complex is defined to be

$$\left(\mathrm{BC}^{\mathrm{C}} := \bigoplus_i MC(f_i, g_i), d^{\mathrm{C}} \right),$$

where $MC(f_i, g_i)$ is the Morse *cochain* complex of C_i using the Morse–Smale pair (f_i, g_i). The differential d^{C} is defined to be $\sum_{k \geq 0} d^{\mathrm{C}}_k$, where d^{C}_k is defined by

$$d^{\mathrm{C}}_0 = d_{\mathrm{M}} \colon MC(f_i, g_i) \to MC(f_i, g_i),$$

for d_{M} the usual Morse differential for (f_i, g_i), and

$$d^{\mathrm{C}}_k \colon MC(f_i, g_i) \to MC(f_{i+k}, g_{i+k}),$$

which is defined by the number of rigid cascades from C_i to C_{i+k} for all $k \geq 1$. A 0–cascade is an unparametrized gradient flow line for (f_i, g_i). For $k \geq 1$, a k–cascade from $a \in \mathrm{Crit}(f_i)$ to $b \in \mathrm{Crit}(f_j)$ for $i < j$ is a tuple for $i < r_1 < \cdots < r_k < j$,

$$(\gamma_i, m_{i,r_1}, \gamma_{r_1}, t_{r_1}, \ldots, m_{r_{k-1}, r_k}, \gamma_{r_k}, t_{r_k}, m_{r_k, j}, \gamma_j),$$

where γ_* is a gradient flow line in C_*, $m_{*,*}$ is a point in $\mathcal{M}_{*,*}$, and the t_* are positive real numbers, satisfying $\gamma_i(-\infty) = a$, $\gamma_i(0) = s(m_{i,r_1})$, $\gamma_j(+\infty) = b$, $\gamma_j(0) = t(m_{r_k, j})$, $\gamma_{r_s}(t_{r_s}) = s(m_{r_s, r_{s+1}})$ and $\gamma_{r_s}(0) = t(m_{r_{s-1}, r_s})$.

When appropriate transversality assumptions are met, the moduli space of all cascades from a to b form a manifold. Moreover, there is a natural compactification of the moduli space by including the "broken" cascades. Then the differential d^{C} for the cascades cochain complex comes from counting the zero-dimensional compactified moduli spaces of cascades.

---

[13]To be more precise, we need to choose a triangulation of $\Delta \times_{C_{i+k}} \mathcal{M}_{i,i+k}$.

[14]That is, stable manifolds and unstable manifolds of $\nabla_{g_i} f_i$ intersect transversely.
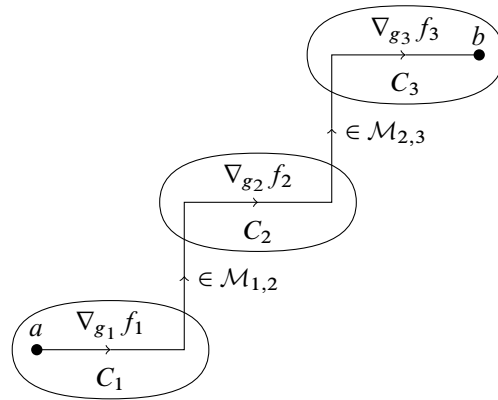
Figure 1: A 2–cascade.

Remark 2.20 The transversality for all compactified moduli spaces of cascades will become tautological if we assume $t_{i,j}$ is a fibration. In principle, we can obtain transversality for the cascades moduli spaces with generic choices of (f_i, g_i). However, the choice depends on $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$, $s_{i,j}$ and $t_{i,j}$, just like Fukaya's model.

Remark 2.21 The cascades construction is very popular and has been deployed in many applications; see [7; 12; 21; 32; 68]. One advantage of the cascades model, besides being locally finite-dimensional, is the clear relation with the Morse model. More precisely, the additional Morse function f_i can be used to perturb the Morse–Bott function into a Morse function whose gradient flow lines can be identified with cascades. This identification was carried out by Banyaga and Hurtubise [5] in the context of finite-dimensional Morse–Bott theory, and Bourgeois and Oancea [15] in the context of symplectic homology with autonomous Hamiltonians.

2.4 Homological perturbation theory

The fibration condition in Austin and Braam's construction plays an important role in resolving the problem of the differential d_k taking values in the space of currents. Since fibration conditions are usually stronger than what one can get in any virtual techniques, we want to replace the fibration condition with a weaker transversality requirement, ie the fiber product transversality condition in Definition 2.9, which is generic in every reasonable virtual technique. Note that the operator d_k is defined using the pushforward of differential forms. Since pushforward is defined as the dual operator of pullback, the problem is rooted in the fact that the dual space of differential forms $\Omega^*(C_i)$ is the space of currents $\mathcal{D}^*(C_i)$ instead of itself. However, this problem never appears for finite-dimensional vector spaces; whenever a finite-dimensional space is equipped with a nondegenerate bilinear form, the dual space is identified with itself. To make use of this fact, we use the homological perturbation lemma, which is a method of constructing small cochain complexes from larger ones. The strategy is to formally apply the homological perturbation lemma to the almost-existing Austin–Braam cochain complex, and then directly verify that the formula suggested by

the perturbation lemma is well defined and gives the desired algebraic relations. The theme of this paper can be summarized by the following slogan:

> Formal applications of the homological perturbation lemma can resolve the technical difficulty of infinite-dimensional cochain models.

2.4.1 A homological perturbation theorem Roughly speaking, the homological perturbation lemma takes in a cochain complex and perturbation data (in most cases projections and homotopies) and produces another cochain complex which is quasi-isomorphic to the input cochain complex. For simplicity, we consider a cochain complex $A = \bigoplus_{i=1}^n A_i$, where the A_i are $\mathbb{Z}/2$–linear spaces (ungraded as usual — i is *not* the grading!). Assume the differential d is in the form of $\sum_{k \geq 0} d_k$ with $d_k : A_i \to A_{i+k}$ for $k \geq 0$. Then $d^2 = 0$ implies that (A_i, d_0) is also a cochain complex for all i. The perturbation data consists of, for each $1 \leq i \leq n$, projections $p_i : A_i \to A_i$ and homotopies $H_i : A_i \to A_i$ between the identity and p_i:

$$(2\text{-}8) \qquad \mathrm{id} - p_i = d_0 \circ H_i + H_i \circ d_0.$$

With this perturbation data, we have the following homological perturbation lemma:

Lemma 2.22 *There is a differential on $\bigoplus_i p_i(A_i)$ such that $\bigoplus_i p_i(A_i)$ is quasi-isomorphic to A.*

The lemma holds for general coefficient rings and graded complexes, once appropriate signs are assigned. Since we only use Lemma 2.22 to explain the motivation behind the formulae we give in Section 3, we will not go into the details of the signs nor the proof. What is more relevant to our purpose is the pattern of the formula for the differential on $\bigoplus p_i(A_i)$, which can be viewed as an analog of the perturbation theorem for A_∞ structures proved in [49]. For a strictly increasing sequence of integers $T = \{i_0 = 0, i_1, \ldots, i_{r+1} = k\}$ for $r \geq 0$, we define the an operator $D_{k,T} : p_i(A_i) \to p_{i+k}(A_{i+k})$ for all integers i by

$$(2\text{-}9) \qquad D_{k,T} = p_{i+k} \circ d_{i_{r+1}-i_r} \circ H_{i+i_r} \circ \cdots \circ H_{i+i_2} \circ d_{i_2-i_1} \circ H_{i+i_1} \circ d_{i_1-i_0} \circ \iota_i,$$

where $\iota_i : p_i(A_i) \to A_i$ denotes the inclusion. $D_{k,T}$ can be schematically explained as follows:
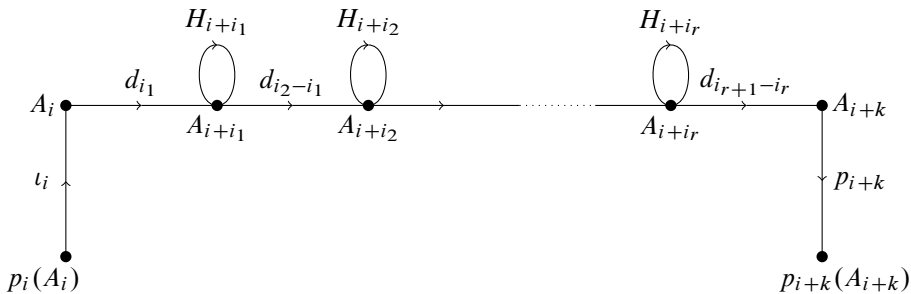
The new differential D on $\bigoplus_i p_i(A_i)$ is defined as

$$D = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} D_k,$$

where $D_k = \sum_T D_{k,T}$ is the summation over all strictly increasing sequences T from 0 to k.

2.4.2 Cascades from homological perturbation In this section, we explain how to heuristically interpret the cascades *cochain* complex as a homological perturbation on the Austin–Braam cochain complex. The feature that the cascades construction does not require the fibration condition also reflects the theme of the paper.

We first explain the perturbation data used to get the cascades cochain complex, that is, a pair of projection and homotopy (p_i, H_i) on $\Omega^*(C_i)$ for every i. We require that the image im p_i is a finite-dimensional subspace of $\Omega^*(C_i)$. Given such perturbation data, we can formally write down operators $D_{k,T}$ from (2-9). Note that in the cascades construction we choose a Morse–Smale pair (f_i, g_i) on each critical manifold C_i. The perturbation data is then given by such a Morse–Smale pair using the construction in [39]. Before giving the construction, we first set up some notation. We will not be precise about signs and orientations.

Definition 2.23 Let C be an oriented closed manifold.

(1) $\mathcal{D}^*(C)$ denotes the space of currents[15] on C. There is a natural inclusion $\iota : \Omega^*(C) \to \mathcal{D}^*(C)$ given by

$$\iota(\alpha)(\beta) = \int_C \alpha \wedge \beta \quad \text{for all } \alpha \in \Omega^*(C).$$

(2) Let $\kappa \in \mathcal{D}^*(C \times C)$ be a current. Then the induced integral operator $I_\kappa : \Omega^*(C) \to \mathcal{D}^*(C)$ is defined as

$$(2\text{-}10) \qquad I_\kappa(\alpha)(\beta) := (-1)^{\dim C} \kappa(\pi_1^* \alpha \wedge \pi_2^* \beta) \quad \text{for all } \alpha, \beta \in \Omega^*(C),$$

where π_1 and π_2 are projections of $C \times C$ to the first and second factors, respectively. We make the signs in (1) and (2) precise for the sake of Section 3.

(3) Let B be an oriented compact manifold and $i : B \to C$ a smooth inclusion. Then we can define a current $[B] \in \mathcal{D}^*(C)$ by

$$[B](\alpha) := \pm \int_B i^* \alpha \quad \text{for all } \alpha \in \Omega^*(C).$$

In general, one can define a current $[B]$ for any oriented singular chain B.

Let $\operatorname{Crit}(f_i)$ be the set of critical points of the Morse function f_i on C_i. We use $\phi_t^i : C_i \to C_i$ to denote the time-t flow of the gradient vector field $\nabla_{g_i} f_i$ on C_i. Then the pullback operator $\phi_{-t}^i{}^* : \Omega^*(C_i) \to \Omega^*(C_i)$ can be understood as the integral operator $I_{[\operatorname{graph} \phi_t^i]}$ of the current of graph $\phi_t^i := \{(x, \phi_t^i(x))\} \subset C_i \times C_i$. The manifold $\bigcup_{0 < t' < t} \operatorname{graph} \phi_{t'}^i \subset C_i \times C_i$ defines an integral operator $H_t^i := I_{[\bigcup_{0 < t' < t} \operatorname{graph} \phi_{t'}^i]} = I_{[\bigcup_{0 \le t' \le t} \operatorname{graph} \phi_{t'}^i]}$. Since $\partial \left(\bigcup_{0 \le t' \le t} \operatorname{graph} \phi_{t'}^i \right) = \Delta_i \cup \operatorname{graph} \phi_t^i$, Stokes' theorem implies that

$$(2\text{-}11) \qquad \operatorname{id} - \phi_{-t}^i{}^* = \mathrm{d} \circ H_t^i + H_t^i \circ \mathrm{d}.$$

It was proven in [39] that when $t \to \infty$, (2-11) converges to a projection–homotopy relation. To be more specific, let U_x and S_x denote the unstable and stable manifolds of the critical point $x \in \operatorname{Crit}(f_i)$:

$$(2\text{-}12) \qquad U_x := \{y \in C_i \mid \lim_{t \to -\infty} \phi_t^i(y) = x\} \quad \text{and} \quad S_x := \{y \in C_i \mid \lim_{t \to \infty} \phi_t^i(y) = x\}.$$

---

[15] For basics of currents, we refer readers to [36].

In the sense of currents, we have the following:

$$(2\text{-}13) \quad \lim_{t\to\infty}[\text{graph }\phi_t^i] = \sum_{x\in\text{Crit}(f_i)}[S_x\times U_x], \quad \text{and} \quad \lim_{t\to\infty}\left[\bigcup_{0<t'<t}\text{graph }\phi_{t'}^i\right] = \left[\bigcup_{0<t'<\infty}\text{graph }\phi_{t'}^i\right].$$

See [39, Theorems 2.3 and 3.3] for details.

Remark 2.24 Importantly, [39] studied $\lim_{t\to\infty}\phi_t^*$ (where ϕ_t^* is represented by $\{(\phi_t^i(x),x)\}\subset C_i\times C_i$) and [39, Theorem 3.3] stated that $\lim_{t\to\infty}\phi_t^*$ can be represented by $\sum_{x\in\text{Crit}(f_i)}[U_x]\times[S_x]$. Then (2-11) projects $\Omega^*(C_i)$ to the Morse *chain* complex [39, Proposition 4.5], or equivalently the Morse *cochain* complex of $-f_i$. Since we need a projection to the Morse *cochain* complex of f_i to explain the cascades model, we need to work with $\lim_{t\to\infty}\phi_{-t}^*$ instead. This explains the discrepancy with [39].

Hence (2-13) defines two integral operators $\phi_{-\infty}^i{}^*, H_\infty^i\colon \Omega^*(C_i)\to \mathcal{D}^*(C_i)$ such that

$$(2\text{-}14) \qquad\qquad\qquad \iota - \phi_{-\infty}^i{}^* = \mathrm{d}\circ H_\infty^i + H_\infty^i\circ \mathrm{d},$$

where ι is the natural embedding $\Omega^*(C_i)\hookrightarrow\mathcal{D}^*(C_i)$; see [39, Theorems 2.3 and 3.3]. Note that

$$(2\text{-}15) \qquad \phi_{-\infty}^i{}^*(\alpha) = \sum_{x\in\text{Crit}(f_i)}\left(\int_{C_i}\alpha\wedge[S_x]\right)\cdot[U_x] = \sum_{x\in\text{Crit}(f_i)}\left(\int_{S_x}\alpha|_{S_x}\right)\cdot[U_x]$$

can be viewed as the projection from $\Omega^*(C_i)$ to the Morse cochain complex; see [39, Theorem 4.1]. By (2-14), H_∞^i defines a homotopy between ι and the projection $\phi_{-\infty}^i{}^*$.

Remark 2.25 Strictly speaking, (2-14) is not a genuine projection–homotopy relation, since $\phi_{-\infty}^i{}^*$ lands in space of currents instead of differential forms. To get an honest projection–homotopy relation, we need to enlarge $\Omega^*(C)$ by adding some currents of singular chains. Roughly speaking, the enlargement is the minimal extension which contains $[U_x]$ and $[S_x]$ for $x\in\text{Crit}(f_i)$ such that it is closed under $\phi_{-\infty}^i{}^*$, H_∞^i and d. Such an enlargement depends on $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$, $s_{i,j}$ and $t_{i,j}$, which leads to the choices in Remark 2.20.

From now on, we will neglect the issue in Remark 2.25 and show formally that the cascades construction can be understood as applying the construction in (2-9) to the Austin–Braam cochain complex using the perturbation data $(\phi_{-\infty}^i{}^*, H_\infty^i)$. Before "proving" the claim, we first "define" the integration of pullbacks of currents from singular chains:

Definition 2.26 Let $\mathcal{M}$ be a compact manifold with two smooth maps $s,t\colon\mathcal{M}\to C_1,C_2$. Assume $B_1\subset C_1$ and $B_2\subset C_2$ are two submanifolds without boundary.[16] If s is transverse to B_1, t is transverse to B_2 and $s^{-1}(B_1)$ is transverse to $t^{-1}(B_2)$ with finite intersections, then we define

$$\int_{\mathcal{M}}s^*([B_1])\wedge t^*([B_2]) := \sum_{p\in s^{-1}(B_1)\cap t^{-1}(B_2)}\pm 1.$$

---

[16]The inclusion $B_*\subset C_*$ is not required to be proper, and hence B_* may not be closed. We only require that B_* is the interior of a compact manifold with boundaries and corners $\bar{B}_*$ so that the inclusion $B_*\hookrightarrow C_*$ is the restriction of a smooth map $\bar{B}_*\to C_*$. Therefore Definition 2.23(3) makes sense for B_1. In particular, the (un)stable manifolds satisfy the condition.

is natural in the sense that if we approximate the current $[B_1]$ by differential forms supported in a tubular neighborhood [36, Chapter 3, Section 1], then the limit of the integration of the pullbacks of the approximations is indeed the number of intersection points counted with sign.[17]

Now we apply (2-9). For $x \in \mathrm{Crit}(f_i)$, the first term D_0 in $D = \sum_{k \geq 0} D_k$ is defined by

$$D_0([U_x]) := \phi^i_{-\infty}{}^*(d_0([U_x])) = \phi^i_{-\infty}{}^*(\mathrm{d}([U_x])) = \sum_{y \in \mathrm{Crit}(f_i)} \left(\int_{C_i} \mathrm{d}([U_x]) \wedge [S_y] \right) \cdot [U_y].$$

It was proven in [39, Proposition 4.5] that when the Morse–Smale condition holds, $\int_{C_i} \mathrm{d}([U_x]) \wedge [S_y]$ equals the signed counts of rigid gradient flow lines from x to y. Therefore D_0 recovers the Morse differential on C_i. Next, we study the higher operators in D. Letting $x \in \mathrm{Crit}(f_i)$,

$$D_1([U_x]) = \phi^{i+1}_{-\infty}{}^* d_1[U_x] = \sum_{y \in \mathrm{Crit}(f_{i+1})} \left(\int_{C_{i+1}} d_1[U_x] \wedge [S_y] \right) \cdot [U_y] \qquad \text{(by (2-15))}$$

$$= \sum_{y \in \mathrm{Crit}(f_{i+1})} \left(\int_{\mathcal{M}_{i,i+1}} s^*_{i,i+1}[U_x] \wedge t^*_{i,i+1}[S_y] \right) \cdot [U_y] \quad \text{(by (2-7))}$$

$$= \sum_{y \in \mathrm{Crit}(f_{i+1})} \#(s^{-1}_{i,i+1}(U_x) \cap t^{-1}_{i,i+1}(S_y)) \cdot [U_y] \qquad \text{(by Definition 2.26)}.$$

The last equality requires that $s^{-1}_{i,i+1}(U_x) \pitchfork t^{-1}_{i,i+1}(S_y)$. So D_1 counts points in $s^{-1}_{i,i+1}(U_x) \cap t^{-1}_{i,i+1}(S_y)$, which is exactly the 1–cascades in [12; 32]. By the same argument, $D_{2,\{0,2\}}$ counts rigid 1–cascades from C_i to C_{i+2}. Next we consider the operator $D_{2,\{0,1,2\}}$:

$$D_{2,\{0,1,2\}}([U_x]) = \phi^{i+2}_{-\infty}{}^* \circ d_1 \circ H^{i+1}_\infty \circ d_1([U_x])$$

$$= \sum_{y \in \mathrm{Crit}(f_{i+2})} \left(\int_{C_{i+2}} (d_1 \circ H^{i+1}_\infty \circ d_1[U_x]) \wedge [S_y] \right) \cdot [U_y] \qquad \text{(by (2-15))}$$

$$= \sum_{y \in \mathrm{Crit}(f_{i+2})} \left(\int_{\mathcal{M}_{i+1,i+2}} s^*_{i+1,i+2}(H^{i+1}_\infty \circ d_1[U_x]) \wedge t^*_{i+1,i+2}[S_y] \right) \cdot [U_y] \quad \text{(by (2-7))}.$$

Let us treat currents just like differential forms for simplicity. By definition,

$$\int_{C_{i+1}} H^{i+1}_\infty \circ d_1([U_x]) \wedge \alpha = \int_{C_{i+1} \times C_{i+1}} \pi^*_1(d_1([U_x])) \wedge \left[\bigcup_{0 < t' < \infty} \mathrm{graph}\, \phi^{i+1}_{t'} \right] \wedge \pi^*_2 \alpha$$

$$= \int_{\mathcal{M}_{i,i+1} \times C_{i+1}} s^*_{i,i+1}[U_x] \wedge (t_{i,i+1} \times \mathrm{id}_{C_{i+1}})^* \left[\bigcup_{0 < t' < \infty} \mathrm{graph}\, \phi^{i+1}_{t'} \right] \wedge \pi^*_2 \alpha.$$

Then

$$H^{i+1}_\infty \circ d_1([U_x]) = \int_{\mathcal{M}_{i,i+1}} s^*_{i,i+1}[U_x] \wedge (t_{i,i+1} \times \mathrm{id}_{C_{i+1}})^* \left[\bigcup_{0 < t' < \infty} \mathrm{graph}\, \phi^{i+1}_{t'} \right].$$

The right-hand side is the integration along the fiber $\mathcal{M}_{i,i+1}$ in the trivial fibration $\mathcal{M}_{i,i+1} \times C_{i+1}$. Therefore $D_{2,\{0,1,2\}}([U_x])$ equals

$$\sum_{y \in \mathrm{Crit}(f_{i+2})} \left(\int_{\mathcal{M}_{i,i+1} \times \mathcal{M}_{i+1,i+2}} s^*_{i,i+1}[U_x] \wedge (t_{i,i+1} \times s_{i+1,i+2})^* \left[\bigcup_{0 < t' < \infty} \mathrm{graph}\, \phi^{i+1}_{t'} \right] \wedge t^*_{i+1,i+2}[S_y] \right) \cdot [U_y].$$

---

[17]The sign is determined by the orientations of B_1, B_2, C_1, C_2 and $\mathcal{M}$.

When transversality holds, by Definition 2.26 this equals

$$\sum_{y \in \mathrm{Crit}(f_{i+2})} \#\left((s_{i,i+1}^{-1}(U_x) \times t_{i+1,i+2}^{-1}(S_y)) \pitchfork \left((t_{i,i+1} \times s_{i+1,i+2})^{-1}\left(\bigcup_{0 < t' < \infty} \mathrm{graph}\, \phi_{t'}^{i+1}\right)\right)\right) \cdot [U_y],$$

which can be interpreted as the counting of 2–cascades from C_i to C_{i+2} staying on C_{i+1} for finite time. Therefore $D_2 = D_{2,\{0,2\}} + D_{2,\{0,1,2\}}$ counts all rigid cascades from C_i to C_{i+2}. In general, assuming transversality for the cascade moduli spaces, we recover the whole cascades construction from (2-9). Hence the cascades construction fits into the homological perturbation philosophy.

3 The minimal Morse–Bott cochain complexes

In this section, we carry out the construction of the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex for an abstract oriented flow category, which is applicable to both finite-dimensional Morse–Bott theory and Floer theories. The motivation of the construction comes from Lemma 2.22 and (2-9) with different perturbation data. We still need to make some choices (Definition 3.3) in the construction of the perturbation data. However, unlike the cascades construction, the choices in the minimal construction only depend on C_i, that is, there is no compatibility requirement with the morphism spaces $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$.

This section is organized as follows: Section 3.1 constructs the perturbation data for the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex. Section 3.2 constructs the Morse–Bott cochain complexes for every oriented flow category. Section 3.3 defines flow morphisms which can be viewed as the geometric analog of the continuation maps and shows that flow morphisms induce morphisms between Morse–Bott cochain complexes. Section 3.4 explains the compositions of flow morphisms. Section 3.5 defines flow homotopies and proves that flow homotopies induce homotopies between morphisms. Section 3.6 establishes that our construction is canonical on the cochain complex level, ie it is independent of all choices. Section 3.7 introduces flow subcategories and quotient categories, which are the geometric analogs of subcomplexes and quotient complexes, respectively. From now on, we will be very specific about the orientations and signs and provide rigorous arguments. Proofs in this section involve a lot of sign computations; we provide a detailed proof of $d_{\mathrm{BC}}^2 = 0$ for the coboundary map d_{BC} in Section 3.2. Proofs of other results in Sections 3.3, 3.4 and 3.5 will only be sketched.

3.1 Perturbation data for the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex

In this subsection, we construct the perturbation data $\{(p_i, H_i)\}$ for the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex of an oriented flow category $\mathcal{C} := \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$. Then (2-9) will motivate the definition of $D_{k,T}$ for the differential. We will show in the next subsection that they indeed define a cochain complex.

3.1.1 The projection p_i We start by defining a projection p_i on $\Omega^*(C_i) = \bigoplus_{j=1}^{\dim C_i} \Omega^j(C_i)$. First note that we have bilinear form on $\Omega^*(C_i)$ given by

$$(3\text{-}1) \qquad \langle \alpha, \beta \rangle_i := (-1)^{\dim C_i \cdot |\beta|} \int_{C_i} \alpha \wedge \beta \quad \text{for all } \alpha, \beta \in \Omega^*(C_i).$$

We can pick representatives $\{\theta_{i,a}\}_{1 \le a \le \dim H^*(C_i)} \subset \Omega^*(C_i)$ of a basis of $H^*(C_i)$, ie $\theta_{i,a}$ are closed forms such that the corresponding cohomology classes form a basis of $H^*(C_i)$. Such a choice gives us a quasi-isomorphic embedding $H^*(C_i) \to \Omega^*(C_i)$. Let $h(i)$ denote the image of the embedding above, so $h(i) := \langle \theta_{i,1}, \dots, \theta_{i,\dim H^*(C_i)} \rangle \subset \Omega^*(C_i)$. Note that (3-1) is nondegenerate on cohomology, and let $\{\theta_{i,a}^*\}_{1 \le a \le \dim H^*(C_i)} \subset h(i)$ be the dual basis to the basis $\{\theta_{i,a}\}$ in the sense that

$$\text{(3-2)} \qquad \langle \theta_{i,a}^*, \theta_{i,b} \rangle_i = \delta_{ab}.$$

Then we can define a projection $p_i : \Omega^*(C_i) \to h(i) \subset \Omega^*(C_i)$ by

$$\text{(3-3)} \qquad p_i(\alpha) := \sum_{a=1}^{\dim H^*(C_i)} \langle \alpha, \theta_{i,a} \rangle_i \cdot \theta_{i,a}^*.$$

If we identify $H^*(C_i)$ with $h(i)$, then p_i can be thought of as a projection from $\Omega^*(C_i)$ to $H^*(C_i)$.

3.1.2 The homotopy H_i

We now explain the related homotopy H_i. First note that the Poincaré dual of the diagonal $\Delta_i \subset C_i \times C_i$ can be represented by Thom classes. We can identify a tubular neighborhood of the diagonal Δ_i with the unit disk bundle of the normal bundle N_i of Δ_i. Then one way of writing Thom classes of the diagonal Δ_i is

$$\text{(3-4)} \qquad \delta_i^n := d(\rho_n \psi_i),$$

where ψ_i is the angular form of the sphere bundle $S(N_i)$ [11, Section 6] using the orientation in Example 2.8 and $\rho_n : \mathbb{R}^+ \to \mathbb{R}$ are smooth functions such that ρ_n is increasing, supported in $[0, 1/n]$ and is -1 near 0. For details of this construction, we refer readers to [11, Section 6]. We also include a brief discussion of this construction and its properties in Appendix A. The most important property of δ_i^n is that it converges to the Dirac current of Δ_i.

Lemma 3.1 *The Thom classes δ_i^n converge to the Dirac current δ_i of the diagonal Δ_i in the sense of currents: for all $\alpha \in \Omega^*(C_i \times C_i)$,*

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \int_{C_i \times C_i} \alpha \wedge \delta_i^n = \int_{C_i \times C_i} \alpha \wedge \delta_i := \int_{\Delta_i} \alpha|_{\Delta_i}.$$
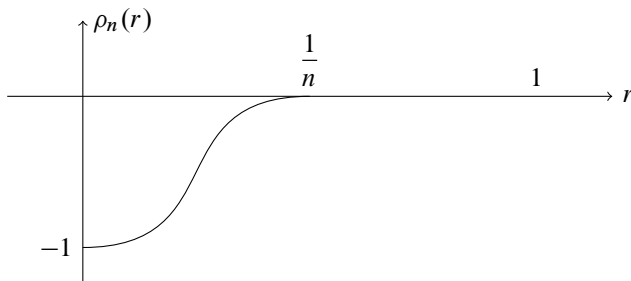

Figure 2: The graph of ρ_n.

We will prove Lemma 3.1 in Appendix A. By (2-10), for $\alpha, \beta \in \Omega^*(C_i)$, we have $\int_{C_i \times C_i} \pi_1^* \alpha \wedge \pi_2^* \beta \wedge \delta_i^n = (-1)^{(\dim C_i)^2} \int_{C_i \times C_i} \delta_i^n \wedge \pi_1^* \alpha \wedge \pi_2^* \beta = (-1)^{\dim C_i} \int_{C_i \times C_i} \delta_i^n \wedge \pi_1^* \alpha \wedge \pi_2^* \beta = I_{\delta_i^n}(\alpha)(\beta)$. Then Lemma 3.1 can be rewritten as

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} I_{\delta_i^n} = I_{\delta_i} = \mathrm{id} \colon \Omega^*(C_i) \to \Omega^*(C_i)$$

in the weak topology. On the other hand, under the orientation convention (2-4) we have another representative of the Poincaré dual of the diagonal by $\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^*$, where π_1 and π_2 are the projections to the first and second factors of $C_i \times C_i$, respectively.

Proposition 3.2 $\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^*$ *is cohomologous to* δ_i^n *for all* n.

Proof Since the pairing (3-1) is nondegenerate on $H^*(C_i \times C_i)$, it suffices to prove that

$$\int_{C_i \times C_i} \alpha \wedge \delta_i^n = \int_{C_i \times C_i} \alpha \wedge \sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^*$$

for any closed form α. Since all δ_i^n are cohomologous to each other for different n, Lemma 3.1 implies that if $\alpha \in \Omega^*(C_i \times C_i)$ is closed, then for all n

$$\int_{C_i \times C_i} \alpha \wedge \delta_i^n = \int_{\Delta_i} \alpha|_{\Delta_i}.$$

Therefore it suffices to show that, for all closed forms $\alpha \in \Omega^*(C_i \times C_i)$,

(3-5) $$\int_{C_i \times C_i} \alpha \wedge \left(\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^* \right) = \int_{\Delta_i} \alpha|_{\Delta_i}.$$

Since the cohomology of $C_i \times C_i$ is spanned by $\{\pi_1^* \theta_{i,c}^* \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,d}\}_{1 \le c,d \le \dim H^*(C_i)}$, it is enough to verify (3-5) for $\alpha = \pi_1^* \theta_{i,c}^* \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,d}$. By definition $\langle \theta_{i,a}^*, \theta_{i,b} \rangle_i = \delta_{ab}$. Then if $c \neq d$,

$$\int_{C_i \times C_i} \pi_1^* \theta_{i,c}^* \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,d} \wedge \left(\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^* \right) = \sum_a \pm \int_{C_i \times C_i} \pi_1^* \theta_{i,c}^* \wedge \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,d} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^*$$

$$= \sum_a \pm \delta_{ca} \delta_{da} = 0.$$

Similarly, when $c = d$,

$$\int_{C_i \times C_i} \pi_1^* \theta_{i,c}^* \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,c} \wedge \left(\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^* \right)$$

$$= \int_{C_i \times C_i} \pi_1^* \theta_{i,c}^* \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,c} \wedge \pi_1^* \theta_{i,c} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,c}^* + \sum_{a \neq c} \pm \delta_{ca} \delta_{ca}$$

$$= (-1)^{|\theta_{i,c}|^2 + |\theta_{i,c}| \cdot |\theta_{i,c}^*|} \int_{C_i \times C_i} \pi_1^* \theta_{i,c}^* \wedge \pi_1^* \theta_{i,c} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,c}^* \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,c}$$

$$= (-1)^{|\theta_{i,c}|^2 + |\theta_{i,c}| \cdot |\theta_{i,c}^*| + \dim C_i |\theta_{i,c}|} \left(\int_{C_i} \theta_{i,c}^* \wedge \theta_{i,c} \right) \langle \theta_{i,c}^*, \theta_{i,c} \rangle_i$$

$$= \int_{C_i} \theta_{i,c}^* \wedge \theta_{i,c} = \int_{\Delta_i} (\pi_1^* \theta_{i,c}^* \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,c})|_{\Delta_i}.$$

Thus (3-5) is proven.   □

As a consequence of Proposition 3.2, there exist primitives $f_i^n \in \Omega^*(C_i \times C_i)$ such that

$$(3\text{-}6) \qquad \mathrm{d} f_i^n = \delta_i^n - \sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^*,$$

$$(3\text{-}7) \qquad f_i^n - f_i^m = (\rho_n - \rho_m)\psi_i.$$

Note that the integral operator I_{δ_i} of the Dirac current δ_i is the identity map from $\Omega^*(C_i)$ to itself. The integral operator $I_{\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^*}$ is the projection p_i in (3-3). Therefore, by (3-6), the integral operator $I_{f_i^n}$ of the primitive f_i^n satisfies

$$(3\text{-}8) \qquad I_{\delta_i^n} - I_{\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^*} = I_{\mathrm{d} f_i^n} = \mathrm{d} \circ I_{f_i^n} + I_{f_i^n} \circ \mathrm{d}.$$

It is proven in Appendix A that f_i^n converges to a current $f_i \in \mathcal{D}^*(C_i \times C_i)$, and the corresponding integral operator I_{f_i} satisfies

$$(3\text{-}9) \qquad \mathrm{id} - p_i = \mathrm{d} \circ I_{f_i} + I_{f_i} \circ \mathrm{d},$$

which is the limit of (3-8). Therefore the integral operator $I_{f_i} = \lim I_{f_i^n}$ gives us the homotopy H_i for the projection p_i. This explains the perturbation data, which shall motivate the differential on the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex. However, we will not use (3-9) to avoid working with currents (f_i is only a current), and always work with the approximation (3-8) and then take limits. More precisely, we will only use the "classical relation" (3-6).

From the discussion above, we have the following definition:

Definition 3.3 *Defining data* Θ *for an oriented flow category* $\mathcal{C}$ *consists of*

- quasi-isomorphic embeddings $H^*(C_i) \to \Omega^*(C_i)$, where the image is denoted by $h(\mathcal{C}, i)$ and we fix a basis $\{\theta_{i,a}\}$ of $h(\mathcal{C}, i)$ and a dual basis $\{\theta_{i,a}^*\}$ in the sense that $\langle \theta_{i,a}^*, \theta_{i,b} \rangle_i = \delta_{ab}$,
- a sequence of Thom classes with form $\delta_i^n = \mathrm{d}(\rho_n \psi_i)$ of the diagonal $\Delta_i \subset C_i \times C_i$ for all i,
- primitives f_i^n such that $\mathrm{d} f_i^n = \delta_i^n - \sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^*$ and $f_i^n - f_i^m = (\rho_n - \rho_m)\psi_i$ for all i.

Remark 3.4 The form $\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^*$ in Definition 3.3 does not depend on the basis $\{\theta_{i,a}\}$ for a fixed quasi-isomorphic embedding $H^*(C_i) \to \Omega^*(C_i)$.

3.1.3 The perturbed operator $D_{k,T,\Theta}$ Given defining data Θ, we are able to write down the operator $D_{k,T,\Theta}$ from (2-9) using the perturbation data introduced above. Those $D_{k,T,\Theta}$ will then be assembled to the differential on the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex. To simplify the presentation, we first introduce the following notation:

(1) We use $[\alpha]$ to denote the cohomology class of a closed form $\alpha \in h(\mathcal{C}, i)$ and $|\alpha|$ to denote the degree of the differential form.

(2) We write $\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\dots,i_r}^{v,k} := \mathcal{M}_{v,v+i_1} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{M}_{v+i_r,v+k}$ for $0 = i_0 < i_1 < i_2 < \cdots < i_r < i_{r+1} = k$ for $r \geq 0$, with the product orientation.

(3) For $\alpha \in \Omega^*(C_v)$, $\gamma \in \Omega^*(C_{v+k})$ and $f_{v+i_j} \in \Omega^*(C_{v+i_j} \times C_{v+i_j})$ for $1 \leq j \leq r$, we define the pairing $\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}, \gamma]$ to be

$$(3\text{-}10)\quad \int_{\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}} s_{v,v+i_1}^* \alpha \wedge (t_{v,v+i_1} \times s_{v+i_1,v+i_2})^* f_{v+i_1} \wedge \cdots$$

$$\wedge (t_{v+i_{r-1},v+i_r} \times s_{v+i_r,v+k})^* f_{v+i_r} \wedge t_{v+i_r,v+k}^* \gamma.$$

Strictly speaking, before taking the wedge product we need to pullback $s_{v,v+i_1}^*\alpha$, $t_{v+i_r,v+k}^*\gamma$ and $(t_{v+i_{j-1},v+i_j} \times s_{v+i_j,v+i_{j+1}})^* f_{v+i_j}$ to $\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}$ through the natural projections. This also applies to all similar formulae in this paper.

(4) For $\alpha \in h(\mathcal{C}, v)$ and $k \geq 1$, we define

$$(3\text{-}11)\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad \dagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, k) := (|\alpha| + m_{v,v+k})(c_{v+k} + 1),$$

$$(3\text{-}12)\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad \ddagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, k) := (|\alpha| + m_{v,v+k} + 1)(c_{v+k} + 1),$$

where $c_i := \dim C_i$, $m_{i,j} := \dim \mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ when $i < j$, and $m_{i,i} := c_i - 1$.

Then the perturbation data in Section 3.1 and (2-9) motivate the following definition:

Definition 3.5 Given defining data Θ and an increasing sequence $T := \{0 = i_0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_r < i_{r+1} = k\}$, we define a linear map $D_{k,T,\Theta}: H^*(C_v) \simeq h(\mathcal{C}, v) \to h(\mathcal{C}, v+k) \simeq H^*(C_{v+k})$ such that

$$(3\text{-}13)\qquad \langle D_{k,T,\Theta}[\alpha], [\gamma]\rangle_{v+k} := (-1)^\star \lim_{n\to\infty} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma]$$

for any $\gamma \in h(\mathcal{C}, v+k)$, where $\star := \sum_{j=0}^r \ddagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_j)$. In other words, by (3-2), we can write

$$(3\text{-}14)\qquad D_{k,T,\Theta}([\alpha]) = \sum_a (-1)^\star \lim_{n\to\infty} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \theta_{v+k,a}] \cdot [\theta_{v+k,a}^*].$$

Remark 3.6 One way to understand the signs in (3-13) is to treat $D_{k,T,\Theta}$ as a composition of certain operators. Let $\alpha \in \Omega^*(C_i)$ and $f \in \Omega^*(C_j \times C_j)$. Then $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ defines an operator

$$\mathcal{M}_{i,j}(\alpha, f) := (-1)^{\ddagger(\mathcal{C},\alpha,0)} \int_{\mathcal{M}_{i,j}} s_{i,j}^* \alpha \wedge (t_{i,j} \times \mathrm{id}_j)^* f \in \Omega^*(C_j),$$

where $t_{i,j} \times \mathrm{id}_j: \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times C_j \to C_j \times C_j$. Here, by omitting the pullback of projections for simplicity, $s_{i,j}^*\alpha \wedge (t_{i,j} \times \mathrm{id}_j)^* f$ is a differential form on $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times C_j$. Integrating along the $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ fiber in the trivial fibration $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times C_j$, we obtain a form on C_j. If $|f| = c_j - 1$, then $|\mathcal{M}_{i,j}(\alpha, f)| = |\alpha| + c_j - 1 - m_{i,j}$, so

$$\ddagger(\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}(\alpha, f), 0) = (|\alpha| + c_j - 1 - m_{i,j} + m_{j,j} + 1)(c_j + 1) = (|\alpha| + c_j - 1 - m_{i,j} + c_j)(c_j + 1)$$

$$\equiv \ddagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, j) \mod 2.$$

Then for $g \in \Omega^*(C_k \times C_k)$,

$$\mathcal{M}_{j,k}(\mathcal{M}_{i,j}(\alpha, f), g) = (-1)^{\ddagger(\mathcal{C},\alpha,0)+\ddagger(\mathcal{C},\alpha,j)} \int_{\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times \mathcal{M}_{j,k}} s_{i,j}^* \alpha \wedge (t_{i,j} \times s_{j,k})^* f \wedge (t_{j,k} \times \mathrm{id}_k)^* g.$$

In general, $(-1)^\star \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{s,k}[\alpha, f_{s+i_1}^n, \ldots, f_{s+i_r}^n, \gamma]$ is the integral of the wedge product of compositions of such operators with $t_{s+i_r,s+k}^*\gamma$ on $\mathcal{M}_{s+i_r,s+k}$. When f is f_j^n for $n \gg 0$, $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}(\alpha, f)$ should be viewed

as an approximation of $H_j \circ d_{j-i} \circ \iota_i(\alpha)$ in (2-9). In general, (3-14) can be viewed as (2-9) applied to the Austin–Braam complex using the perturbation data in this subsection.

The following lemma asserts that (3-13) is well defined and will be used in the proof of the main theorem; we prove it in Appendix A.

Lemma 3.7 *We have that* $\lim_{n\to\infty} \mathcal{M}^{s,k}_{i_1,\dots,i_r}[\alpha, f^n_{s+i_1}, \dots, f^n_{s+i_r}, \gamma] \in \mathbb{R}$ *exists for every* $\alpha \in \Omega^*(C_s)$, $\gamma \in \Omega^*(C_{s+k})$ *and any defining data.*

3.2 The minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex

The main theorem of this subsection is that we can get a well-defined cochain complex out of an oriented flow category with any defining data. The cochain complex is generated by the cohomology $H^*(C_i)$ of the flow category, and hence it is called the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex.

Definition 3.8 Given defining data Θ, the minimal Morse–Bott complex of an oriented flow category $\mathcal{C} := \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$ is defined by

$$\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}, \Theta) := \mathrm{BC} := \varinjlim_{q\to-\infty} \prod_{j=q}^{\infty} H^*(C_j),$$

ie the direct sum near the negative end and direct product near the positive end.[18] To be more precise, every element in BC is a function $A: \mathbb{Z} \to \prod_{i=-\infty}^{\infty} H^*(C_i)$ such that $A(i) \in H^*(C_i)$, and there exists $N_A \in \mathbb{Z}$ such that $A(i) = 0$ for all $i < N_A$. The differential $d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta}: \mathrm{BC} \to \mathrm{BC}$ is defined as $\prod_{k\geq 1} d_{k,\Theta}$, where $d_{k,\Theta}: H^*(C_v) \to H^*(C_{v+k})$ is defined as

$$d_{k,\Theta} := \sum_T D_{k,T,\Theta}$$

for all increasing sequence $T = \{0 = i_0 < i_1 < \dots < i_r < i_{r+1} = k\}$ with $r \geq 0$. In other words,

$$(3\text{-}15) \qquad \langle d_{k,\Theta}[\alpha], [\gamma]\rangle_{v+k} = \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_T (-1)^\star \mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\dots,i_r}[\alpha, f^n_{v+i_1}, \dots, f^n_{v+i_r}, \gamma]$$

for $\alpha \in h(\mathcal{C}, v)$, $\gamma \in h(\mathcal{C}, v+k)$ and $\star = \sum_{j=0}^r \ddagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_j)$. Defining $d_{i,\Theta} = 0$ for $i \leq 0$, then for $A \in \mathrm{BC}$,

$$(d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta} A)(i) := \sum_{j\in\mathbb{Z}} d_{i-j,\Theta} A(j).$$

Note that it is a finite sum. If moreover the flow category has a grading structure $\{d_i\}$, then BC is also graded. The grading of an element $\alpha \in H^*(C_i)$ is $|\alpha| + d_i$, which shall be viewed as in $\mathbb{Z}/k$ if $\{d_i\}$ is only a grading structure in $\mathbb{Z}/k$.

Remark 3.9 The degree of $d_{k,\Theta}[\alpha]$ in $H^*(C_{v+k})$ is $|\alpha| + c_{v+k} - m_{v,v+k}$ under the simplifying assumption after Remark 2.11 that c_i and $m_{i,j}$ are well defined. If the assumption is not satisfied, then

---

[18]Assume $\mathcal{C}$ arises from a Morse–Bott function f on a noncompact manifold (but $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ is still compact, so it cannot be any Morse–Bott function on any noncompact manifold). The differential in the cochain complex should increase the value of f, which forces the cochain complex to take the direct limit in the positive direction.

$d_{k,T,\Theta}$ can be decomposed with respect to the connected components of $\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\dots,i_r}^{v,k}$ so that each component has a well-defined degree in $H^*(C_{v+k})$. Then we need to keep track of the connected component in the proofs, which only results in complication of notation.

The main result of this section in the following:

Theorem 3.10 *Given an oriented flow category $\mathcal{C}$ and defining data Θ, $(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta})$ is a cochain complex. The cohomology $H(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta})$ is independent of the defining data Θ. If in addition the flow category is graded, then BC is also graded and the degree of $d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta}$ is 1.*

Remark 3.11 (1) We prove in Section 8 that when the flow category comes from a Morse–Bott function f on a closed manifold M, the cohomology of the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex is the regular cohomology $H^*(M, \mathbb{R})$. This follows from the definition if f is constant: since the flow category is $\{C_0 = M\}$ with only identities in the morphism space, $\mathrm{BC} = H^*(C_0, \mathbb{R}) = H^*(M; \mathbb{R})$ with $d_{\mathrm{BC}} = 0$. Therefore it suffices to show that the cohomology of the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex is independent of the Morse–Bott function f.

(2) If all the critical manifolds C_i are discrete, then the defining data Θ is unique. Assume, for simplicity, that each C_i consists of one point. The minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex BC is generated by the critical points and equals the usual Morse cochain complex:

$$(3\text{-}16) \qquad \mathrm{BC} = \varinjlim_{q \to -\infty} \prod_{j=q}^{\infty} H^*(C_j) = \varinjlim_{q \to -\infty} \prod_{j=q}^{\infty} \mathbb{R}.$$

Since $|f_i^n| = -1$, we have that $d_{k,\Theta} \colon H^*(C_v) \to H^*(C_{v+k})$ only has the leading term

$$(3\text{-}17) \qquad \langle d_{k,\Theta}[1], [1] \rangle_{v+k} = \mathcal{M}^{v,k}[1,1] = \int_{\mathcal{M}_{v,v+k}} 1.$$

Therefore the differential $d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta} := \sum_{k \geq 1} d_{k,\Theta_0}$ is just the signed counting of all zero-dimensional moduli spaces $\mathcal{M}_{v,v+k}$, which is the usual cochain differential in a nondegenerate Morse/Floer theory.

Remark 3.12 Theorem 3.10 is the simplest version. We generalize Theorem 3.10 in Sections 5 and 6 to the cases where C_i is not oriented, C_i is not compact, and the defining data is not minimal, ie the rank of the projection in the perturbation data is larger than $\dim H^*(C_i)$.

Corollary 3.13 *If the oriented flow category $\mathcal{C}$ has the property that $\dim C_i \leq k$ for all i, then the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex $\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C})$ only depends on $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ with $\dim \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \leq 2k$.*

Proof Since $|f_i^n| = \dim C_i - 1 \leq k - 1$ and $|\alpha|, |\gamma| \leq k$, if $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ appears in an integral in the definition of the differential with $\dim \mathcal{M}_{i,j} > 2k$, there is no way the pullbacks of those forms can contain a nontrivial component in $\bigwedge^{\dim \mathcal{M}_{i,j}} \mathcal{M}_{i,j}$. Therefore the integral must be zero. Note that when $k = 0$, this amounts to saying that the cochain complex only depends on zero-dimensional moduli spaces (although the existence of 1–dimensional moduli spaces is needed to show that $d^2 = 0$). $\square$

We first show that $(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta})$ is a cochain complex; the invariance is deferred to the next subsection. For simplicity, we first introduce notation:

(1) For $0 < i_1 < i_2 \cdots < i_r < k$, define

(3-18) $\quad \mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_p,\ldots,i_r} := \mathcal{M}_{v,v+i_1} \times \cdots \times (\mathcal{M}_{v+i_{p-1},v+i_p} \times_{v+i_p} \mathcal{M}_{v+i_p,v+i_{p+1}}) \times \cdots \times \mathcal{M}_{v+i_r,v+k}$

with the product orientation.

(2) Define $\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}[\mathrm{d}(\alpha, f_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}, \gamma)]$ to be

$$\int_{\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}} \mathrm{d}(s^*_{v,v+i_1}\alpha \wedge (t_{v,v+i_1} \times s_{v+i_1,v+i_2})^* f_{v+i_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge (t_{v+i_{r-1},v+i_r} \times s_{v+i_r,v+k})^* f_{v+i_r} \wedge t^*_{v+i_r,v+k}\gamma)$$

for $\alpha \in \Omega^*(C_v)$, $\gamma \in \Omega^*(C_{v+k})$ and $f_{v+i_j} \in \Omega^*(C_{v+i_j} \times C_{v+i_j})$.

(3) Define the pairing $\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_p,\ldots,i_r}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f_{v+i_{p-1}}, f_{v+i_{p+1}}, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}, \gamma]$ over $\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_p,\ldots,i_r}$ to be

$$\int_{\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_p,\ldots,i_r}} s^*_{v,v+i_1}\alpha \wedge (t_{v,v+i_1} \times s_{v+i_1,v+i_2})^* f_{v+i_1} \wedge \cdots \wedge (t_{v+i_{p-2},v+i_{p-1}} \times s_{v+i_{p-1},v+i_{p+1}})^* f_{v+i_{p-1}}$$
$$\wedge (t_{v+i_{p-1},v+i_{p+1}} \times s_{v+i_{p+1},v+i_{p+2}})^* f_{v+i_{p+1}} \wedge \cdots \wedge (t_{v+i_{r-1},v+i_r} \times s_{v+i_r,v+k})^* f_{v+i_r} \wedge t^*_{v+i_r,v+k}\gamma.$$

(4) When we compose two operators, a trace term will appear. Therefore we introduce

(3-19) $\qquad \mathrm{Tr}^{v+i_p} \mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f_{v+i_{p-1}}, \theta\theta^*_{v+i_p}, f_{v+i_{p+1}}, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}, \gamma]$

to denote

$$\int_{\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}} s^*_{v,v+i_1}\alpha \wedge (t_{v,v+i_1} \times s_{v+i_1,v+i_2})^* f_{v+i_1} \wedge \cdots$$
$$\wedge (t_{v+i_{p-1},v+i_p} \times s_{v+i_p,v+i_{p+1}})^* \left(\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{v+i_p,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta^*_{v+i_p,a}\right) \wedge \cdots \wedge (t_{v+i_r} \times s_{v+i_r})^* f_{v+i_r} \wedge t^*_{v+k}\gamma,$$

where π_1 and π_2 are the projections of $C_{v+i_p} \times C_{v+i_p}$ to the first and second factors, respectively.

Heuristically speaking, the "Thom class" of $\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_{p-1},\bar{i}_p,i_{p+1},\ldots,i_r} \subset \mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}$ is given by the pullback of $(t_{v+i_{p-1},v+i_p} \times s_{v+i_p,v+i_{p+1}})^* \delta^n_{v+i_p} \in \Omega^*(\mathcal{M}_{v+i_{p-1},v+i_p} \times \mathcal{M}_{v+i_p,v+i_{p+1}})$ to $\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}$ by the natural projection. Hence we have the following lemma, which is crucial to the proof that $d^2_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta} = 0$, and will be proven in [Appendix A](#).

Lemma 3.14 *For an oriented flow category $\mathcal{C}$ and any defining data, we have*

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}[\alpha, f^n_{v+i_1}, \ldots, \delta^n_{v+i_p}, \ldots, f^n_{v+i_r}, \gamma]$$
$$= (-1)^* \lim_{n\to\infty} \mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_{p-1},\bar{i}_p,i_{p+1},\ldots,i_r}[\alpha, f^n_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f^n_{v+i_r}, \gamma],$$

where $* = (|\alpha| + m_{v,v+i_p})c_{v+i_p}$.

Proposition 3.15 *We have that $(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta})$ is a cochain complex, that is, $d^2_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta} = 0$.*

Proof For simplicity, we will suppress the subscript Θ in the proof. It suffices to show that for all $\alpha \in h(\mathcal{C}, v)$ and $\gamma \in h(\mathcal{C}, v+k)$,

$$(3\text{-}20) \qquad \left\langle \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} d_{k-i} \circ d_i[\alpha], [\gamma] \right\rangle_{v+k} = 0.$$

We first prove the following lemma:

Lemma 3.16 *For* $r \geq 1$,

$$(3\text{-}21) \quad 0 = (-1)^{|\alpha| c_v} \int_{\partial \mathcal{M}_{v,v+k}} s_{v,v+k}^* \alpha \wedge t_{v,v+k}^* \gamma$$

$$= \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_r < k} (-1)^{\star_1} \mathcal{M}_{i_1, \ldots, i_r}^{v,k} [\mathrm{d}(\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma)]$$

$$+ \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{\substack{1 \leq p \leq q \leq r \\ 0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_q < k}} (-1)^{\star_2} \mathrm{Tr}^{v+i_p} \mathcal{M}_{i_1, \ldots, i_q}^{v,k}$$

$$\cdot [\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_{p-1}}^n, \theta \theta_{v+i_p}^*, f_{v+i_{p+1}}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_q}^n, \gamma],$$

where

$$(3\text{-}22) \quad \star_1 = |\alpha| c_v + \sum_{j=1}^{r} \dagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_j) \quad \text{and} \quad \star_2 = |\alpha|(c_v + 1) + \sum_{j=1}^{p-1} \ddagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_j) + \sum_{j=p}^{q} \dagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_j).$$

Proof **Step 1** $(r = 1)$ In this case, since $p = q = r = 1$ for the second term, we write $i = i_1$. Then $\star_2 = |\alpha|(c_v + 1) + \dagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i)$. Using the equation $\delta_*^n - \sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{*,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{*,a}^* = \mathrm{d} f_*^n$ for any $n \in \mathbb{N}$,

$$(-1)^{\star_2} \mathrm{Tr}^{v+i} \mathcal{M}_i^{v,k} [\alpha, \theta \theta_{v+i}^*, \gamma]$$

$$= \sum_i (-1)^{\star_2} \mathcal{M}_i^{v,k} [\alpha, \delta_{v+i}^n - \mathrm{d} f_{v+i}^n, \gamma]$$

$$= \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_i (-1)^{\star_2} \mathcal{M}_i^{v,k} [\alpha, \delta_{v+i}^n - \mathrm{d} f_{v+i}^n, \gamma]$$

$$(3\text{-}23) \qquad = \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_i (-1)^{\star_2} \mathcal{M}_i^{v,k} [\alpha, \delta_{v+i}^n, \gamma] + \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_i (-1)^{\star_2 + 1} \mathcal{M}_i^{v,k} [\alpha, \mathrm{d} f_{v+i}^n, \gamma].$$

By Lemma 3.14,

$$(3\text{-}24) \qquad \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_i (-1)^{\star_2} \mathcal{M}_i^{v,k} [\alpha, \delta_{v+i}^n, \gamma] = \sum_i (-1)^{\star_2 + (|\alpha| + m_{v,v+i}) c_{v+i}} \mathcal{M}_i^{v,k} [\alpha, \gamma].$$

Since $(-1)^{\star_2 + (|\alpha| + m_{v,v+i}) c_{v+i}} = (-1)^{|\alpha| c_v + m_{v,v+i}}$ and $\partial[\mathcal{M}_{ik}] = \sum (-1)^{m_{i,j}} [\mathcal{M}_{ij}] \times_j [\mathcal{M}_{jk}]$, by Stokes' theorem this equals

$$\sum_i (-1)^{|\alpha| c_v + m_{v,v+i}} \int_{\mathcal{M}_{v,v+i} \times_{v+i} \mathcal{M}_{v+i,v+k}} s_{v,v+i}^* \alpha \wedge t_{v+i,v+k}^* \gamma$$

$$= (-1)^{|\alpha| c_v} \int_{\partial \mathcal{M}_{v,v+k}} s_{v,v+k}^* \alpha \wedge t_{v,v+k}^* \gamma = (-1)^{|\alpha| c_v} \int_{\mathcal{M}_{v,v+k}} \mathrm{d}(s_{v,v+k}^* \alpha \wedge t_{v,v+k}^* \gamma) = 0.$$

Now, the second summand in (3-23) equals

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_i (-1)^{\star_2 + 1 + |\alpha|} \mathcal{M}_i^{v,k} [\mathrm{d}(\alpha, f_{v+i}^n, \gamma)].$$

Note that the difference between $\star_1$ and $\star_2$ in the $r = 1$ case is indeed $|\alpha|$. This proves the $r = 1$ case.

Step 2 (independence of r) We need to prove that the value of the right-hand side does not change from r to $r + 1$. To do this, we apply Stokes' theorem to the exact term in (3-21) in the r case. The boundary $\partial(\mathcal{M}_{v,v+i_1} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{M}_{v+i_r,v+k})$ comes from fiber product at $v + w$ for all t and w such that $0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_t < w < i_{t+1} < \cdots < i_r < k$. Consider the boundary coming from the fiber product at $v + w$. After applying Stokes' theorem to the exact term in (3-21), the contribution from integration over the $\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_t,\bar{w},\ldots,i_r}^{v,k} \subset \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}$ is

$$(3\text{-}25) \qquad (-1)^{\star_3} \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_t,\bar{w},\ldots,i_r}^{v,k} [\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma],$$

where $\star_3 = |\alpha| c_v + \sum_{j=1}^{r} \dagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_j) + m_{v,v+i_1} + \cdots + m_{v+i_t,v+w}$. By replacing the fiber product in $\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_t,\bar{w},\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}$ with the Cartesian product $\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_t,w,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}$, Lemma 3.14 gives that (3-25) equals

$$(3\text{-}26) \qquad (-1)^{\star_3 + (|\alpha| + m_{v,v+w}) c_{v+w}} \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_t,w,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k} [\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, \delta_{v+w}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma].$$

We replace the Thom class δ_*^n by $\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{*,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{*,a}^* + \mathrm{d} f_*^n$ to get

$$(3\text{-}27) \quad (-1)^{\star_3 + (|\alpha| + m_{v,v+w}) c_{v+w}} \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathrm{Tr}^{v+w} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_t,w,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k} [\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, \theta \theta_{v+w}^*, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma]$$

$$(3\text{-}28) \qquad + (-1)^{\star_3 + (|\alpha| + m_{v,v+w}) c_{v+w}} \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_t,w,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k} [\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, \mathrm{d} f_{v+w}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma].$$

Let $\star_4$ denote $\star_3 + (|\alpha| + m_{v,v+w}) c_{v+w}$. By (2-5),

$$\star_4 = |\alpha| (c_v + 1) + \sum_{j=1}^{t} \ddagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_j) + \dagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, w) + \sum_{j=t+1}^{r} \dagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_j) \mod 2.$$

Because $\star_5 := \star_4 + |\alpha| + \sum_{j=1}^{t} (c_{v+i_j} + 1) \equiv |\alpha| c_v + \sum_{j=1}^{r} \dagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_j) + \dagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, w) \mod 2$ and $|f_{v+i_j}^n| \equiv c_{v+i_j} + 1 \mod 2$, (3-28) equals

$$(3\text{-}29) \quad \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_t < w < i_{t+1} < i_r < k} (-1)^{\star_5} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_t,w,i_{t+1},\ldots,i_r}^{v,k} [\mathrm{d}(\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, f_{v+w}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma)].$$

Therefore, the right-hand side equals

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{\substack{1 \le p \le q \le r \\ 0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_q < k}} (-1)^{\star_2} \mathrm{Tr}^{v+i_p} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_q}^{s,k} [\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_{p-1}}^n, \theta \theta_{v+i_p}^*, f_{v+i_{p+1}}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_q}^n, \gamma]$$

$$+ \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_t < w < i_{t+1} < i_r < k} (-1)^{\star_4} \mathrm{Tr}^{v+w} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_t,w,i_{t+1},\ldots,i_r}^{s,k} [\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, \theta \theta_{v+w}^*, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma]$$

$$+ \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_t < w < i_{t+1} < i_r < k} (-1)^{\star_5} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_t,w,i_{t+1},\ldots,i_r}^{v,k} [\mathrm{d}(\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, f_{v+w}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma)].$$

This is the $r + 1$ case, so we have proved the claim. $\qquad \square$

Going back to the proof of Proposition 3.15, in the case of $r = k - 1$ in Lemma 3.16, the terms

$$(3\text{-}30) \qquad \lim_{n \to \infty} (-1)^{\star_1} \mathcal{M}_{1,\ldots,k-1}^{v,k} [\mathrm{d}(\alpha, f_{v+1}^n, \ldots, f_{v+k-1}^n, \gamma)],$$

and

$$(3\text{-}31) \quad \lim_{n\to\infty} \sum_{\substack{1\le p\le q\le k-1 \\ 0<i_1<\cdots<i_q<k}} (-1)^{\star_2} \operatorname{Tr}^{v+i_p} \mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_q}[\alpha, f^n_{v+i_1},\ldots, f^n_{v+i_{p-1}}, \theta\theta^*_{v+i_p}, f^n_{v+i_{p+1}},\ldots, f^n_{v+i_q}, \gamma]$$

sum to zero, where

$$\star_1 = |\alpha|c_v + \sum_{j=1}^{k-1} \dagger(\mathcal{C},\alpha,j) \quad \text{and} \quad \star_2 = |\alpha|(c_v+1) + \sum_{j=1}^{p-1} \ddagger(\mathcal{C},\alpha,i_j) + \sum_{j=p}^{q} \dagger(\mathcal{C},\alpha,i_j).$$

Since $\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{1,\ldots,k-1}$ is a closed manifold, (3-30) is 0 by Stokes' theorem. For the remaining term, we claim that (3-31) equals

$$(3\text{-}32) \qquad \left\langle \sum_{i=1}^{k-1} d_{k-i} \circ d_i[\alpha], [\gamma] \right\rangle_{v+k}.$$

Since $|d_i\alpha| = |\alpha| + m_{v,v+i} + c_{v+i} \mod 2$,

$$\ddagger(\mathcal{C}, d_i\alpha, j) = \dagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i+j) \mod 2.$$

Then the claim simply follows from the definition of d_i. $\qquad\qquad\square$

Remark 3.17 From the proof of Proposition 3.15, we see that there is no harm in suppressing the index n and $\lim_{n\to\infty}$ by Lemmas 3.7 and 3.14. If we write f_i as the limit of f_i^n in the space of currents such that

$$(3\text{-}33) \qquad\qquad \delta_i = \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^* + \mathrm{d} f_i,$$

where δ_i is the Dirac current, then we can use (3-33) to do formal computations.

3.3 Flow morphisms induce cochain morphisms

Section 3.2 shows that a flow category carries enough geometric structure to define a cochain complex. In the following subsections, we study the analogous geometric data for cochain complex morphisms and homotopies. In this subsection, we introduce flow morphisms between flow categories, which is the underlying geometric data for defining continuation maps [2, Chapter 11]. We show that every flow category has an identity flow morphism from the flow category to itself. Using the identity flow morphism, we show that $H(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta})$ is independent of the defining data Θ, finishing the proof of Theorem 3.10.

3.3.1 Flow morphisms

Definition 3.18 An *oriented flow morphism* $\mathfrak{H}$ from an oriented flow category $\mathcal{C} := \{C_i, \mathcal{M}^C_{i,j}\}$ to another oriented flow category $\mathcal{D} := \{D_i, \mathcal{M}^D_{i,j}\}$ is a family of compact oriented manifolds $\{\mathcal{H}_{i,j}\}_{i,j\in\mathbb{Z}}$ such that:

(1) There are two smooth maps $s\colon \mathcal{H}_{i,j} \to C_i$ and $t\colon \mathcal{H}_{i,j} \to D_j$.

(2) There exists $N \in \mathbb{Z}$, such that $\mathcal{H}_{i,j} = \varnothing$ when $i - j > N$.

(3) For every $i_0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_k$, $j_0 < \cdots < j_{m-1} < j_m$, the fiber product

$$\mathcal{M}^C_{i_0,i_1} \times_{i_1} \cdots \times_{i_k} \mathcal{H}_{i_k,j_0} \times_{j_0} \cdots \times_{j_{m-1}} \mathcal{M}^D_{j_{m-1},j_m}$$

is cut out transversely.

(4) There are smooth maps $m_L \colon \mathcal{M}^C_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{H}_{j,k} \to \mathcal{H}_{i,k}$ and $m_R \colon \mathcal{H}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}^D_{j,k} \to \mathcal{H}_{i,k}$ such that

$$s \circ m_L(a,b) = s^C(a), \quad t \circ m_L(a,b) = t(b), \quad s \circ m_R(a,b) = s(a) \quad \text{and} \quad t \circ m_R(a,b) = t^D(b),$$

where s^C is the source map for the flow category $\mathcal{C}$ and t^D is the target map for the flow category $\mathcal{D}$.

(5) The map $m_L \cup m_R \colon \left(\bigcup_j \mathcal{M}^C_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{H}_{j,k} \right) \cup \left(\bigcup_j \mathcal{H}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}^{\mathcal{D}}_{j,k} \right) \to \partial \mathcal{H}_{i,k}$ is a diffeomorphism up to zero-measure (Definition 2.6).

(6) The orientation $[\mathcal{H}_{i,j}]$ has the following properties:

$$\partial[\mathcal{H}_{i,j}] = \sum_{p>0} (-1)^{m^C_{i,i+p}} m_L([\mathcal{M}^C_{i,i+p} \times_{i+p} \mathcal{H}_{i+p,j}]) + \sum_{p>0} (-1)^{h_{i,j}} m_R([\mathcal{H}_{i,j-p} \times_{j-p} \mathcal{M}^D_{j-p,j}]),$$

$$(t^C \times s)^*[N_j][\mathcal{M}^C_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{H}_{j,k}] = (-1)^{c_j m^C_{i,j}} [\mathcal{M}^C_{i,j}][\mathcal{H}_{j,k}],$$

$$(t \times s^D)^*[N_j][\mathcal{H}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}^D_{j,k}] = (-1)^{d_j h_{i,j}} [\mathcal{H}_{i,j}][\mathcal{M}^D_{j,k}].$$

Here $c_i := \dim C_i$, $m^C_{i,j} := \dim \mathcal{M}^C_{i,j}$, $d_j := \dim D_j$ and $h_{i,j} = \dim \mathcal{H}_{i,j}$.

By (4), we have a formula similar to (2-6). Thus it is convenient to use m_L and m_R to identify $\mathcal{M}^C_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{H}_{j,k}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}^D_{j,k}$ with the corresponding parts of $\partial \mathcal{H}_{i,k}$. Hence in the following, we will suppress m_L and m_R, and treat $\mathcal{M}^C_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{H}_{j,k}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}^D_{j,k}$ as though they are contained in $\partial \mathcal{H}_{i,k}$.

Remark 3.19 Condition (2) is important in obtaining a finite sum in the definition of the induced cochain morphism. In the context of Morse/Floer theories, the existence of N usually comes from some energy estimates. More precisely, $\mathcal{H}_{i,j}$ is typically the compactification of the space of solutions to parametrized Floer equations/gradient flow equations interpolating the geometric data for $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$. Then there is usually some notion of energy $E(u)$ for a Floer cylinder/gradient flow u in the moduli space $\mathcal{H}_{i,j}$ such that $E(u) \geq 0$. Now we assume that the energy $E(u)$ satisfies inequality $E(u) \leq g(D_j) - f(C_i) + C$, where f and g are the background Morse–Bott functionals for $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$, and C is a universal constant depending on the interpolating data we use to define the moduli space $\mathcal{H}_{i,j}$. Assuming the critical values do not accumulate for simplicity,[19] then if $j \ll i$ we have $E(u) < 0$, ie there are no curves in $\mathcal{H}_{i,j}$.

Remark 3.20 Similar to Definition 2.13, we say $\mathfrak{H}$ is compatible with the grading structures on $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ if and only if $d(C_i) = d(D_j) + d_j - h_{i,j}$, where $\{d(C_i)\}$ and $\{d(D_j)\}$ are grading structures on $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$, respectively. When this holds, the cochain morphism ϕ^H below will have degree 0.

The main result of this subsection is that oriented flow morphisms induce cochain morphisms between the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complexes. Let $\mathcal{C} := \{C_i, \mathcal{M}^C_{i,j}\}$ and $\mathcal{D} := \{D_i, \mathcal{M}^{\mathcal{D}}_{i,j}\}$ be two oriented flow categories and assume $\mathfrak{H} = \{\mathcal{H}_{i,j}\}$ is an oriented flow morphism from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$. Then we introduce the following:

---

[19]When critical values accumulate see Remark 2.11.

(1) We write $c_i := \dim C_i$, $d_i := \dim D_i$, $m^C_{i,j} := \dim \mathcal{M}^C_{i,j}$, $m^D_{i,j} := \dim \mathcal{M}^D_{i,j}$ and $h_{i,j} := \dim \mathcal{H}_{i,j}$. We formally define $m^C_{i,i} = c_i - 1$ and $m^D_{i,i} = d_i - 1$ as before. We assume, as before, that those numbers are well defined. Then

$$h_{i,j} + m^D_{j,k} - d_j + 1 = h_{i,k} \quad \text{for } j \le k \qquad \text{and} \qquad m^C_{i,j} + h_{j,k} - c_i + 1 = h_{i,k} \quad \text{for } i \le j$$

by [Definition 3.18](#).

(2) For $v, k \in \mathbb{Z}$, $0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_p$ and $j_1 < \cdots < j_q < k$, we define

$$\mathcal{H}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | j_1,\ldots,j_q} := \mathcal{M}^C_{v,v+i_1} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{M}^C_{v+i_{p-1},v+i_p} \times \mathcal{H}_{v+i_p,v+j_1} \times \mathcal{M}^D_{v+j_1,v+j_2} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{M}^D_{v+j_q,v+k}$$

with the product orientation.

(3) $\mathcal{H}^{*,*}_{\cdots|\cdots}[\alpha, f_*, \ldots, f_*, \ldots, \gamma]$ is defined similarly to $\mathcal{M}^{*,*}_{\cdots|\cdots}[\alpha, f_*, \ldots, f_*, \ldots, \gamma]$ in [(3-10)](#).

(4) We define $\dagger(\mathfrak{H}, \alpha, k) = (|\alpha| + h_{v,v+k})(d_{v+k} + 1)$ and $\ddagger(\mathfrak{H}, \alpha, k) := (|\alpha| + h_{v,v+k} + 1)(d_{v+k} + 1)$ for $\alpha \in \Omega^*(C_v)$.

Let $\Theta_1 := \{h(C, i), f^{C,n}_i\}$ and $\Theta_2 := \{h(D, i), f^{D,n}_i\}$ be defining data for flow categories C and D, respectively. Let $\mathfrak{H} := \{\mathcal{H}_{i,j}\}$ be an oriented flow morphism from C to D. The counterparts of Lemmas [3.7](#) and [3.14](#) hold for $\mathcal{H}$ by the same argument. Then define a linear operator $\phi^H_{k,\Theta_1,\Theta_2} : H^*(C_v) \to H^*(D_{v+k})$ for every $v, k \in \mathbb{Z}$ by

$$(3\text{-}34) \quad \langle \phi^H_{k,\Theta_1,\Theta_2}[\alpha], [\gamma] \rangle_{v+k}$$

$$:= \sum_{\substack{p,q \ge 0 \\ 0 = i_0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_p \\ j_1 < \cdots < j_q < j_{q+1} = k}} (-1)^* \mathcal{H}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p|j_1,\ldots,j_q}[\alpha, f^C_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f^C_{v+i_p}, f^D_{v+j_1}, \ldots, f^D_{v+j_q}, \gamma]$$

$$:= \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{\substack{p,q \ge 0 \\ 0 = i_0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_p \\ j_1 < \cdots < j_q < j_{q+1} = k}} (-1)^* \mathcal{H}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p|j_1,\ldots,j_q}[\alpha, f^{C,n}_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f^{C,n}_{v+i_p}, f^{D,n}_{v+j_1}, \ldots, f^{D,n}_{v+j_q}, \gamma],$$

where

$$* := |\alpha| c_v + h_{v,v+j_1} + \sum_{w=1}^p \ddagger(C, \alpha, i_w) + \sum_{w=1}^q \ddagger(\mathfrak{H}, \alpha, j_w).$$

The existence of N in [Definition 3.18(2)](#) implies that [(3-34)](#) is a finite sum and $\phi^H_{k,\Theta_1,\Theta_2} = 0$ for $k < -N$.

Theorem 3.21 *Let $\mathfrak{H} : C \Rightarrow D$ be an oriented flow morphism. If we fix defining data $\Theta_1 := \{h(C, i), f^{C,n}_i\}$ and $\Theta_2 := \{h(D, i), f^{D,n}_i\}$ for C and D, respectively, then there is a linear map*

$$\phi^H_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2} = \prod_{k \in \mathbb{Z}} \phi^H_{k,\Theta_1,\Theta_2} : \mathrm{BC}(C, \Theta_1) \to \mathrm{BC}(D, \Theta_2)$$

given by [(3-34)](#) such that

$$\phi^H_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2} \circ d^C_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta_1} - d^D_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta_2} \circ \phi^H_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2} = 0.$$

In particular, $\phi^H_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2}$ induces a map $H(\mathrm{BC}(C), d^C_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta_1}) \to H(\mathrm{BC}(D), d^D_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta_2})$ on cohomology.

Proof Similar to the proof of Proposition 3.15, this theorem follows from the claim that, for $\alpha \in h(\mathcal{C}, v)$, $\gamma \in h(\mathcal{C}, v + k)$ with $k \in \mathbb{Z}$, and any $r \geq 1$, we have

$$0 = (-1)^{1+|\alpha|c_v+h_{v,v+k}} \int_{\partial H_{v,v+k}} s^*\alpha \wedge t^*\gamma$$

$$= \sum_{\substack{0 \leq p \leq r \\ 0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_p \\ j_1 < \cdots < j_{r-p} < k}} (-1)^{*_1} \mathcal{H}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p|j_1,\ldots,j_{r-p}}[d(\alpha, f^C_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f^C_{v+i_p}, f^D_{v+j_1}, \ldots, f^D_{v+j_{r-p}}, \gamma)]$$

$$+ \sum_{\substack{0 \leq p \leq q \leq r, 1 \leq t \leq p \\ 0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_p \\ j_1 < \ldots < j_{q-p} < k}} (-1)^{*_2} \mathrm{Tr}^{v+i_t} \mathcal{H}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p|j_1,\ldots,j_{q-p}}[\alpha, f^C_{v+i_1}, \ldots, \theta^C \theta^C_{v+i_t}{}^*, \ldots, f^D_{v+i_{q-p}}, \gamma]$$

$$+ \sum_{\substack{0 \leq p \leq q \leq r, 1 \leq t \leq q-p \\ 0 < i_1 < \ldots < i_p \\ j_1 < \ldots < j_{q-p} < k}} (-1)^{*_3} \mathrm{Tr}^{v+j_t} \mathcal{H}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p|j_1,\ldots,j_{q-p}}[\alpha, f^C_{v+i_1}, \ldots, \theta^D \theta^D_{v+j_t}{}^*, \ldots, f^D_{v+i_{q-p}}, \gamma].$$

Here

$$*_1 = 1 + |\alpha|(c_v + 1) + h_{v,v+j_1} + \sum_{w=1}^{p} \dagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_w) + \sum_{w=1}^{r-p} \dagger(\mathfrak{H}, \alpha, j_w),$$

$$*_2 = 1 + |\alpha|c_v + h_{v,v+j_1} + \sum_{w=1}^{t-1} \ddagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_w) + \sum_{w=t}^{p} \dagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_w) + \sum_{w=1}^{q-p} \dagger(\mathfrak{H}, \alpha, j_w),$$

$$*_3 = 1 + |\alpha|c_v + h_{v,v+j_1} + \sum_{w=1}^{p} \ddagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_w) + \sum_{w=1}^{t-1} \ddagger(\mathfrak{H}, \alpha, j_w) + \sum_{w=t}^{q-p} \dagger(\mathfrak{H}, \alpha, j_w).$$

The proof is again by induction, and we omit it. Then for $r > k + N$, the first exact term is zero, as $\mathcal{H}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p|j_1,\ldots,j_{r-p}}$ is necessarily empty by Definition 3.18(2). We can directly check that the remaining terms are exactly $\langle(\phi^H \circ d^C - d^D \circ \phi^H)\alpha, \gamma\rangle_{v+k}$, and hence the theorem holds. $\square$

Similar to Corollary 3.13, we have the following:

Corollary 3.22 *Assume that oriented flow categories $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ have the property that $\dim C_i, \dim D_i \leq k$ for all i. If $\mathfrak{H}: \mathcal{C} \Rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ is an oriented flow morphism, then $\phi^H: \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}, \Theta_1) \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{D}, \Theta_2)$ only depends on those $\mathcal{M}^C_{i,j}$, $\mathcal{H}_{i,j}$ and $\mathcal{M}^D_{i,j}$ of dimension $\leq 2k$.*

3.3.2 The identity flow morphism Next we show that, for every oriented flow category $\mathcal{C}$, there is an oriented flow morphism $\mathfrak{I}: \mathcal{C} \Rightarrow \mathcal{C}$, which is referred to as the identity flow morphism. Roughly speaking, when the flow category has a background Morse–Bott function, the identity flow morphism comes from the compactified moduli space of parametrized gradient flow lines, (flow lines not modulo the $\mathbb{R}$ translation action). Using the identity flow morphism, we show the Morse–Bott cohomology is independent of the defining data.

Definition/Lemma 3.23 *For an oriented flow category $\mathcal{C}$, there is a canonical oriented flow morphism $\mathfrak{I}: \mathcal{C} \Rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ given by $\mathcal{I}_{i,j} = \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j-i]$ with the product orientation for $i \leq j$, and $\mathcal{I}_{i,j} = \varnothing$ for $i > j$. The source and target maps $s, t: \mathcal{I}_{i,j} \to C_i, C_j$ are defined as*

$$s = s^C \circ \pi_1 \quad \text{and} \quad t = t^C \circ \pi_1,$$

where π_1 is the projection to the $\mathcal{M}$ component. The compositions m_L and m_R are defined by

$$m_L : \mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{I}_{k,j} \to \mathcal{I}_{i,j}, \quad (a, b, t) \mapsto (m(a, b), t + k - i),$$

$$m_R : \mathcal{I}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j} \to \mathcal{I}_{i,j}, \quad (a, t, b) \mapsto (m(a, b), t),$$

where m is the composition in $\mathcal{C}$.

Before giving the proof, we will first use Definition/Lemma 3.23 to finish the proof of Theorem 3.10:

Proof of Theorem 3.10 Let Θ_1 and Θ_2 be defining data for the oriented flow category $\mathcal{C}$. We have shown in Proposition 3.15 that $(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC}, \Theta_1})$ and $(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC}, \Theta_2})$ are cochain complexes. By (3-34), the cochain morphism $\phi^I_{\Theta_1, \Theta_2} : (\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC}, \Theta_1}) \to (\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC}, \Theta_2})$ induced by the identity flow morphism $\mathfrak{I}$ can be written as $\mathrm{id} + N$, where N is strictly upper triangular, ie N sends $H^*(C_s)$ to $\prod_{t=s+1}^\infty H^*(C_t)$. Note that $\sum_{n=0}^\infty (-N)^n$ is well defined on the cochain complex BC, and $\sum_{n=0}^\infty (-N)^n$ is the inverse to $\mathrm{id} + N$. Thus $\phi^I_{\Theta_1, \Theta_2}$ is an isomorphism, and hence induces an isomorphism on cohomology. $\square$

Remark 3.24 When $\Theta_1 = \Theta_2$, we show in Section 3.6 that $\phi^I_{\Theta_1, \Theta_2}$ is homotopic to the identity map. In particular, we will show that the construction, up to homotopy, is functorial with respect to the choice of defining data.

Proof of Definition/Lemma 3.23 Definition 3.18(2) follows from $\mathcal{I}_{i,j} = \varnothing$ for $i > j$. Condition (3) holds for $\mathfrak{I}$ due to the transversality property of the flow category $\mathcal{C}$. Since $m_L(\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{I}_{k,j}) = \mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j} \times [k - i, j - i]$ and $m_R(\mathcal{I}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j}) = \mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j} \times [0, k - i]$, the flow morphism conditions (4) and (5) are satisfied by $\mathfrak{I}$. Therefore we need only check (6), the orientation condition.

Unless stated otherwise, products of manifolds are always equipped with the product orientation. For $i < j$,

(3-35) $\partial[\mathcal{I}_{i,j}]$

$$= \partial[\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j - i]]$$

$$= (-1)^{m_{i,j}+1} [\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times \{0\}] + (-1)^{m_{i,j}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times \{j - i\}] + \sum_{i < k < j} (-1)^{m_{i,k}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j} \times [0, j - i]]$$

(3-36) $= (-1)^{m_{i,j}+1} [\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times \{0\}] + (-1)^{m_{i,j}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times \{j - i\}]$

(3-37) $\displaystyle + \sum_{i < k < j} (-1)^{m_{i,k}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j} \times [0, k - i]] + \sum_{i < k < j} (-1)^{m_{i,k}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j} \times [k - i, j - i]].$

Since the flow category $\mathcal{C}$ is oriented, for $i < k < j$

(3-38) $$(t^C \times s^C)^* [N_k][\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j}] = (-1)^{c_k m_{i,k}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,k}][\mathcal{M}_{k,j}].$$

Let π be the projection $\mathcal{I}_{i,j} \to \mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ for $i < j$. Then

$$(t \times s^C)^* N_k = \pi^* (t^C \times s^C)^* N_k |_{\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j} \times [0, k-i]},$$

$$(t^C \times s)^* N_k = \pi^* (t^C \times s^C)^* N_k |_{\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j} \times [k-i, j-i]}.$$

Therefore (3-38) implies

$$(3\text{-}39) \qquad (t \times s^C)^* [N_k][\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j} \times [0, k-i]] = (-1)^{c_{i,k} m_{i,k} + m_{k,j}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times [0, k-i]][\mathcal{M}_{k,j}]$$
$$= (-1)^{c_{i,k} m_{i,k} + m_{k,j}} [\mathcal{I}_{i,k}][\mathcal{M}_{j,k}],$$

$$(3\text{-}40) \quad (t^C \times s)^* [N_k][\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j} \times [k-i, j-i]] = (-1)^{c_k m_{i,j}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,k}][\mathcal{M}_{k,j} \times [k-i, j-i]]$$
$$= (-1)^{c_k m_{i,j}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,k}][\mathcal{I}_{k,j}].$$

If we orient $\mathcal{I}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j}$ by $(-1)^{m_{k,j} + c_k}[\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j}][[0, k-i]]$ and orient $[\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{I}_{k,j}]$ by $[\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j}][[k-i, j-i]]$, then (3-39) implies that the first summand in (3-37) equals

$$(3\text{-}41) \qquad (-1)^{m_{i,k}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j} \times [0, k-i]] = (-1)^{m_{i,j}+1} [\mathcal{I}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j}]$$

and that

$$(3\text{-}42) \qquad (t \times s^C)^* [N_k][\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_j \mathcal{I}_{k,j}] = (-1)^{c_k (m_{i,k}+1)} [\mathcal{I}_{i,k}][\mathcal{M}_{k,j}].$$

And (3-40) implies that the second summand in (3-37) equals

$$(3\text{-}43) \qquad (-1)^{m_{i,k}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{k,j} \times [k-i, j-i]] = (-1)^{m_{i,k}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{I}_{k,j}]$$

and that

$$(3\text{-}44) \qquad (t^C \times s)^* [N_k][\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times_k \mathcal{I}_{k,j}] = (-1)^{c_k m_{i,k}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,k}][\mathcal{I}_{k,j}].$$

We still have to consider the first two copies of $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ in (3-36). Since $m_L \colon \mathcal{I}_{i,i} \times_i \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \to \mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ and $m_R \colon \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{I}_{j,j} \to \mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ are diffeomorphisms, we can orient $\mathcal{I}_{i,i} \times_i \mathcal{M}_{i,j} = C_i \times_i \mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ and $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{I}_{j,j} = \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j C_j$ by $m_L^{-1}([\mathcal{M}_{i,j}])$ and $m_R^{-1}([\mathcal{M}_{i,j}])$. Then by Lemma 3.25 below and the discussion after,

$$(3\text{-}45) \qquad (t \times s^C)^* [N_i][C_i \times \mathcal{M}_{i,j}] = (-1)^{c_i^2} [C_i][\mathcal{M}_{i,j}],$$

$$(3\text{-}46) \qquad (t^C \times s)^* [N_j][\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j C_j] = (-1)^{c_j m_{i,j}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,j}][C_j].$$

Therefore

$$(-1)^{m_{i,j}+1} [\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times \{0\}] = (-1)^{m_{i,j}+1} m_R([\mathcal{I}_{i,i} \times_i \mathcal{M}_{i,j}]),$$

$$(3\text{-}47) \qquad [(t \times s^C)^* N_j][\mathcal{I}_{i,i} \times_i \mathcal{M}_{i,j}] = (-1)^{c_i^2} [\mathcal{I}_{i,i}][\mathcal{M}_{i,j}],$$

$$(-1)^{m_{i,j}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times \{j-i\}] = (-1)^{m_{i,j}} m_L([\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{I}_{j,j}]),$$

$$[(t^C \times s)^* N_i][\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{I}_{j,j}] = (-1)^{c_j m_{i,j}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,j}][\mathcal{I}_{j,j}].$$

To sum up, (3-41), (3-42), (3-43), (3-44) and (3-47) prove the orientation condition, Definition 3.18(6). □

To state Lemma 3.25 we need some notation. Let E and F be two oriented finite-dimensional vector spaces and $l \colon E \to F$ be a linear map. We denote by Δ_F the diagonal subspace of $F \times F$. Suppose the ordered basis $(f_1, \dots, f_n)$ represents the orientation $[F]$ of F and the ordered basis $(e_1, \dots, e_m)$ represents the orientation of E. Then $((f_1, f_1), \dots, (f_n, f_n))$ determines an orientation $[\Delta_F]$ of Δ_F. Like (2-4), we

orient the quotient bundle, ie the normal bundle, $(F \times F)/\Delta_F$ so that $[\Delta_F][(F \times F)/\Delta_F] = [F][F]$. The fiber product $E \times_l F$ is the graph of l in $E \times F$, so $((e_1, l(e_1)), \ldots, (e_m, l(e_m)))$ determines an orientation $[E \times_l F]$ on $E \times_l F = \text{graph } l$. The projection $\pi \colon E \times_l F \to E$ is an isomorphism and the orientation we put on $E \times_l F$ has the property that $\pi([E \times_l F]) = [E]$. Since $(l, \text{id}) \colon (E \times F)/(E \times_l F) \to (F \times F)/\Delta_F$ is an isomorphism, we can orient $(E \times F)/(E \times_l F)$ by $(l, \text{id})([(E \times F)/(E \times_l F)]) = [(F \times F)/\Delta_F]$. What we describe here is the tangent picture of $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j C_j$: letting $(m, c) \in \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j C_j$, the correspondences are $E = T_m \mathcal{M}_{i,j}$, $F = T_c C_j$ and $l = Ds|_m$, and the orientations match up.

Lemma 3.25 *Following the notation above, we have*

$$[(E \times F)/(E \times_l F)][E \times_l F] = (-1)^{\dim E \dim F}[E][F].$$

Proof The ordered basis $((0_F, f_1), \ldots, (0_F, f_n))$ represents a basis for $(F \times F)/\Delta_F$ as well as the orientation $[(F \times F)/\Delta_F]$. Note that $((0_E, f_1), \ldots, (0_E, f_n))$ represents a basis for $(E \times F)/(E \times_l F)$, and is mapped to $((0_F, f_1), \ldots, (0_F, f_n))$ through the map (l, id); thus $((0_E, f_1), \ldots, (0_E, f_n))$ represents the orientation on $(E \times F)/E \times_l F$. Since $((e_1, l(e_1)), \ldots, (e_m, l(e_m)), (0_E, f_1), \ldots, (0_E, f_n))$ represents the orientation $[E][F]$,

$$[E \times_l F][(E \times F)/(E \times_l F)] = [E][F] \quad \text{or} \quad [(E \times F)/E \times_l F][(E \times_l F)] = (-1)^{\dim E \dim F}[E][F],$$

which yields (3-46). □

Similarly, consider $F \times_l E$ oriented by $((l(e_1), e_1), \ldots, (l(e_m), e_m))$. If we orient $(F \times E)/(F \times_l E)$ by $(\text{id}, l)([(F \times E)/(F \times_l E)]) = [(F \times F)/\Delta_F]$, then

$$[(F \times E)/(F \times_l E)][F \times_l E] = (-1)^{(\dim F)^2}[F][E],$$

which yields (3-45).

3.4 Compositions of flow morphisms

Roughly speaking, the composition of flow morphisms is taking fiber products. Hence, in the Morse–Bott case, not every flow morphism can be composed, and we introduce the following concept:

Definition 3.26 Two flow morphisms $\mathfrak{H} \colon \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$ and $\mathfrak{F} \colon \mathcal{D} \to \mathcal{E}$ are *composable* if and only if the fiber products $\mathcal{M}^C_{i_1,i_2} \times_{i_2} \cdots \times_{i_{p-1}} \mathcal{M}^C_{i_{p-1},i_p} \times_{i_p} \mathcal{H}_{i_p,j_1} \times_{j_1} \mathcal{M}^D_{j_1,j_2} \times_{j_2} \cdots \times_{j_{q-1}} \mathcal{M}^D_{j_{q-1},j_q} \times_{j_q} \mathcal{F}_{j_q,k_1} \times_{k_1} \mathcal{M}^E_{k_1,k_2} \times_{k_2} \cdots \times_{k_{r-1}} \mathcal{M}^E_{k_{r-1},k_r}$ are cut out transversely.

Heuristically, one can define the composition $\mathfrak{F} \circ \mathfrak{H}$ of two composable morphisms $\mathfrak{F}$ and $\mathfrak{H}$ to be $(\mathcal{F} \circ \mathcal{H})_{i,k} = \bigcup_j \mathcal{H}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{F}_{j,k}$, where the orientation is determined by

(3-48) $$(t^H \times s^F)^*[N_j][\mathcal{H}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{F}_{j,k}] = (-1)^{d_j h_{i,j}} [\mathcal{H}_{i,j}][\mathcal{F}_{j,k}].$$

By Definition 3.18(2), $(\mathcal{F} \circ \mathcal{H})_{i,k}$ is a compact manifold. However, this is no longer a flow morphism, since the boundary can come from fiber products in the middle in addition to fiber products at the two ends,[20] violating Definition 3.18(5). Hence we introduce the following definition.

Definition 3.27 An *oriented flow premorphism* $\mathfrak{F} \colon \mathcal{C} \Rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ is a family of compact oriented manifolds $\mathcal{F}_{i,j}$ with smooth maps $s \colon \mathcal{F}_{i,j} \to C_i$ and $t \colon \mathcal{F}_{i,j} \to D_j$. Moreover, there exists N such that, for $i - j > N$, $\mathcal{F}_{i,j} = \varnothing$ and the fiber products $\mathcal{M}^C_{i_0,i_1} \times_{i_1} \cdots \times_{i_k} \mathcal{F}_{i_k,j_0} \times_{j_0} \cdots \times_{j_{l-1}} \mathcal{M}^D_{j_{l-1},j_l}$ are cut out transversely for all $i_0 < \cdots < i_k$ and $j_0 < \cdots < j_l$.

Given a flow premorphism $\mathfrak{F}$, one can still define ϕ^F by (3-34), which may not be a cochain morphism. Let $\mathfrak{H}$ and $\mathfrak{F}$ be two composable flow morphisms. Then $\mathfrak{F} \circ \mathfrak{H}$ is a flow premorphism by definition. We need to understand the relation between $\phi^{F \circ H}$ and $\phi^F \circ \phi^H$. The main result of this subsection is that they differ by a homotopy. Before stating the theorem, we first introduce some notation:

(1) $\mathcal{E} := \{E_i, \mathcal{M}^E_{i,j}\}$ is an oriented flow category, $e_i := \dim E_i$, $m^E_{i,j} := \dim \mathcal{M}^E_{i,j}$ and $f_{i,j} := \dim \mathcal{F}_{i,j}$. These are again assumed to be well defined for simplicity.

(2) For $k \in \mathbb{Z}$, $0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_p$, $j_1 < \cdots < j_q$ and $k_1 < \cdots < k_r < k$, we define $\mathcal{F} \times \mathcal{H}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | j_1,\ldots,j_q | k_1,\ldots,k_r}$ to be

$$\mathcal{M}^C_{v,v+i_1} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{H}_{v+i_p,v+j_1} \times \mathcal{M}^D_{v+j_1,v+j_2} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{F}_{v+j_q,v+k_1} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{M}^E_{v+k_r,v+k}.$$

Note that we must have $q \geq 1$ for this to be defined.

(3) $(\mathcal{F} \times \mathcal{H})^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | j_1,\ldots,j_q | k_1,\ldots,k_r} [\alpha, f^C_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f^C_{v+i_p}, f^D_{v+j_1}, \ldots, f^D_{v+j_q}, f^E_{v+k_1}, \ldots, f^E_{v+k_r}, \gamma]$ is defined similarly to (3-10).

To define the homotopy operator $P_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2,\Theta_3}$, or P for simplicity, for $k \in \mathbb{Z}$, $\alpha \in h(\mathcal{C}, v)$ and $\gamma \in h(\mathcal{E}, v+k)$, we define P by

$$(3\text{-}49) \quad \langle P[\alpha], [\gamma] \rangle_{v+k}$$
$$= \sum_{\substack{p,r \geq 0, q \geq 1 \\ 0 = i_0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_p, j_1 < \cdots < j_q \\ k_1 \leq \cdots < k_{r+1} = k}} (-1)^{\bigstar} F$$
$$\times H^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | j_1,\ldots,j_q | k_1,\ldots,k_r} [\alpha, f^C_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f^C_{v+i_p}, f^D_{v+j_1}, \ldots, f^D_{v+j_q}, f^E_{v+k_1}, \ldots, f^E_{v+k_r}, \gamma],$$

where

$$\bigstar := 1 + |\alpha|(c_v+1) + \dim(\mathcal{F} \circ \mathcal{H})_{v,v+k_1} + \sum_{w=1}^{p} \ddagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_w) + h_{v,v+j_1} + \sum_{w=1}^{q} \ddagger(\mathfrak{H}, \alpha, j_w) + \sum_{w=1}^{r} \dagger(\mathfrak{F} \circ \mathfrak{H}, \alpha, k_w).$$

---

[20]Although, in this case, the breaking from fiber products in the middle should pair up and "cancel" with each other; this is morally why we have Theorem 3.28.

Theorem 3.28 Let $\mathfrak{H}$ and $\mathfrak{F}$ be composable oriented flow morphisms from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$ and from $\mathcal{D}$ to $\mathcal{E}$, respectively. If we fix defining data Θ_1, Θ_2 and Θ_3 for $\mathcal{C}$, $\mathcal{D}$ and $\mathcal{E}$, then there exists an operator $P_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2,\Theta_3} \colon \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}) \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{E})$ defined by (3-49) such that

$$\phi^{F \circ H}_{\Theta_1,\Theta_3} - \phi^F_{\Theta_2,\Theta_3} \circ \phi^H_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2} + P_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2,\Theta_3} \circ d^C_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta_1} + d^E_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta_3} \circ P_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2,\Theta_3} = 0.$$

Proof For $\alpha \in h(\mathcal{C}, v)$, $\gamma \in h(\mathcal{E}, v+k)$ with $k \in \mathbb{Z}$, and any $l \geq 1$, we have

$$
\begin{aligned}
0 =\ & \sum_{r \leq l} \sum_{p+q=r-1} (-1)^{\bigstar_1} (\mathcal{F} \circ \mathcal{H})^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | k_1,\ldots,k_q} [\alpha,\ldots,f^C_{v+i_*},\ldots,f^E_{v+k_*},\ldots,\gamma] \\
& + \sum_{p+r+w=l} (-1)^{\bigstar_2} (\mathcal{F} \times \mathcal{H})^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | j_1,\ldots,j_r | k_1,\ldots,k_w} [\mathrm{d}(\alpha,\ldots,f^C_{v+i_*},\ldots,f^D_{v+j_*},\ldots,f^E_{v+k_*},\ldots,\gamma)] \\
& + \sum_{\substack{p+q+w \leq l, \\ u \geq 1}} (-1)^{\bigstar_3} \mathrm{Tr}^{v+iu} (\mathcal{F} \times \mathcal{H})^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | j_1,\ldots,j_q | k_1,\ldots,k_w} [\alpha,\ldots,f^C_{v+i_*},\ldots,\theta\theta^C_{v+iu}{}^*,\ldots,f^D_{v+j_*},\ldots,f^E_{v+k_*},\ldots,\gamma] \\
& + \sum_{\substack{p+q+w \leq l, \\ u \geq 1}} (-1)^{\bigstar_4} \mathrm{Tr}^{v+ju} \mathcal{F} \times \mathcal{H}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | j_1,\ldots,j_q | k_1,\ldots,k_w} [\alpha,\ldots,f^C_{v+i_*},\ldots,f^D_{v+j_*},\ldots,\theta\theta^D_{v+ju}{}^*,\ldots,f^E_{v+k_*},\ldots,\gamma] \\
& + \sum_{\substack{p+q+w \leq l, \\ u \geq 1}} (-1)^{\bigstar_5} \mathrm{Tr}^{v+ku} \mathcal{F} \times \mathcal{H}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | j_1,\ldots,j_q | k_1,\ldots,k_w} [\alpha,\ldots,f^C_{v+i_*},\ldots,f^D_{v+j_*},\ldots,f^E_{v+k_*},\ldots,\theta\theta^E_{v+ku}{}^*,\ldots,\gamma]
\end{aligned}
$$

where we omit the obvious constraints $0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_p$, $j_1 < \cdots < j_q$ and $k_1 < \cdots < k_w < k$. The indices for signs are

$$\bigstar_1 = 1 + |\alpha|c_v + \dim(\mathcal{F} \circ \mathcal{H})_{v,v+k_1} + \sum_{s=1}^{p} \ddagger(\mathcal{C},\alpha,i_s) + \sum_{s=1}^{q} \ddagger(\mathfrak{F} \circ \mathfrak{H},\alpha,k_s),$$

$$\bigstar_2 = |\alpha|c_v + \dim(\mathcal{F} \circ \mathcal{H})_{v,v+k_1} + \sum_{s=1}^{p} \dagger(\mathcal{C},\alpha,i_s) + h_{v,v+j_1} + \sum_{s=1}^{r} \dagger(\mathfrak{H},\alpha,j_s) + \sum_{s=1}^{w} \ddagger(\mathfrak{F} \circ \mathfrak{H},\alpha,k_s),$$

$$\bigstar_3 = |\alpha|(c_v+1) + \dim(\mathcal{F} \circ \mathcal{H})_{v,v+k_1} + \sum_{s=1}^{u-1} \ddagger(\mathcal{C},\alpha,i_s) + \sum_{s=u}^{p} \dagger(\mathcal{C},\alpha,i_s) + h_{v,v+j_1} + \sum_{s=1}^{r} \dagger(\mathfrak{H},\alpha,j_s) + \sum_{s=1}^{w} \ddagger(\mathfrak{F} \circ \mathfrak{H},\alpha,k_s),$$

$$\bigstar_4 = |\alpha|(c_v+1) + \dim(\mathcal{F} \circ \mathcal{H})_{v,v+k_1} + \sum_{s=1}^{p} \ddagger(\mathcal{C},\alpha,i_s) + h_{v,v+j_1} + \sum_{s=1}^{u-1} \ddagger(\mathfrak{H},\alpha,j_s) + \sum_{s=u}^{r} \dagger(\mathfrak{H},\alpha,j_s) + \sum_{s=1}^{w} \ddagger(\mathfrak{F} \circ \mathfrak{H},\alpha,k_s),$$

$$\begin{aligned}\bigstar_5 = {} & |\alpha|(c_v+1) + \dim(\mathcal{F} \circ \mathcal{H})_{v,v+k_1} + \sum_{s=1}^{p} \ddagger(\mathcal{C},\alpha,i_s) + h_{v,v+j_1} + \sum_{s=1}^{r} \ddagger(\mathfrak{H},\alpha,j_s) + \sum_{s=1}^{u-1} \dagger(\mathfrak{F} \circ \mathfrak{H},\alpha,k_s) \\ & + \sum_{s=u}^{w} \ddagger(\mathfrak{F} \circ \mathfrak{H},\alpha,k_s).\end{aligned}$$

The proof is again by induction on l, which we omit. Then for $l \gg 0$, the exact term is zero. It is direct to check that the first term is $-\langle \phi^{F \circ H} \alpha, \gamma \rangle_{v+k}$, the third term is $-\langle P \circ d^C \alpha, \gamma \rangle_{v+k}$, the fourth term is $\langle \phi^F \circ \phi^H \alpha, \gamma \rangle_{v+k}$ and the last term is $-\langle d^E \circ P\alpha, \gamma \rangle_{v+k}$; hence the theorem follows. $\square$

As a corollary, $\phi^{F \circ H}_{\Theta_1,\Theta_3}$ is a cochain map between $(\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}), d^C_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta_1})$ and $(\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{E}), d^E_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta_3})$, and is homotopic to $\phi^F_{\Theta_2,\Theta_3} \circ \phi^H_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2}$.

3.5 Flow homotopies induce cochain homotopies

In this subsection, we introduce the flow homotopies between flow premorphisms. Such structures can be viewed as the analog of the geometric data needed to define homotopies between continuation maps in Floer theories [2, Chapter 11].

Definition 3.29 An *oriented flow homotopy* $\mathscr{Y}$ between two flow *premorphisms* $\mathfrak{F} = \{\mathcal{F}_{i,j}\}$ and $\mathfrak{H} = \{\mathcal{H}_{i,j}\}$ from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$ is a family of oriented compact manifolds $\{\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}\}$ with smooth source and target maps $s \colon \mathcal{Y}_{i,j} \to C_i$ and $t \colon \mathcal{Y}_{i,j} \to D_j$ such that:

(1)   There are smooth maps $\iota_F, \iota_H \colon \mathcal{F}_{i,j}, \mathcal{H}_{i,j} \to \mathcal{Y}_{i,j}$ such that $s \circ \iota_F = s^F$, $s \circ \iota_H = s^H$, $t \circ \iota_F = t^F$ and $t \circ \iota_H = t^H$ where s^F, s^H, t^F and t^H are the source and target maps for $\mathfrak{F}$ and $\mathfrak{H}$, respectively.

(2)   There exists $N \in \mathbb{N}$ such that when $i - j > N$, we have $\mathcal{Y}_{i,j} = \varnothing$.

(3)   For all $i_0 < \cdots < i_k$ and $j_0 < \cdots < j_l$, the fiber products $\mathcal{M}^C_{i_0,i_1} \times_{i_1} \cdots \times_{i_k} \mathcal{Y}_{i_k,j_0} \times_{j_0} \cdots \times_{j_{l-1}} \mathcal{M}^D_{j_{l-1},j_l}$ are cut out transversely.

(4)   There are smooth maps $m_L \colon \mathcal{M}^C_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{Y}_{j,k} \to \mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$ and $m_R \colon \mathcal{Y}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}^D_{j,k} \to \mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$ such that

$$s \circ m_L(a,b) = s^C(a), \quad t \circ m_L(a,b) = t(b), \quad s \circ m_R(a,b) = s(a) \quad \text{and} \quad t \circ m_R(a,b) = t^D(b).$$

Here s^C is the source map for $\mathcal{C}$ and t^D is the target map for $\mathcal{D}$.

(5)   The map $\iota_F \cup \iota_H \cup m_L \cup m_R \colon \mathcal{F}_{i,k} \cup \mathcal{H}_{i,k} \cup \left(\bigcup_j \mathcal{M}^C_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{Y}_{j,k} \right) \cup \left(\bigcup_j \mathcal{Y}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}^D_{j,k} \right) \to \partial \mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$ is a diffeomorphism up to measure-zero sets.

(6)   The orientation $[\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}]$ has the following properties:

$$\partial[\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}] = \iota_F([\mathcal{F}_{i,j}]) - \iota_H([\mathcal{H}_{i,j}]) + \sum_{p>0} (-1)^{c_i+p+1} m_L([\mathcal{M}^C_{i,i+p} \times_{i+p} \mathcal{Y}_{i+p,j}])$$

$$+ \sum_{p>0} (-1)^{y_{i,j}} m_R([\mathcal{Y}_{i,j-p} \times_{j-p} \mathcal{M}^D_{j-p,j}]),$$

$$(t^C \times s)^*[N_j][\mathcal{M}^C_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{Y}_{j,k}] = (-1)^{c_j m^C_{i,j}} [\mathcal{M}^C_{i,j}][\mathcal{Y}_{j,k}],$$

$$(t \times s^D)^*[N_j][\mathcal{H}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}^D_{j,k}] = (-1)^{d_j y_{i,j}} [\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}][\mathcal{M}^D_{j,k}],$$

where $y_{i,j} := \dim \mathcal{Y}_{i,j}$.

The main result of this subsection is that flow homotopies induce homotopies between the maps induced by the boundary flow premorphisms (which are not necessarily cochain morphisms). Before stating the theorem, we introduce the following notation:

(1)   For $k \in \mathbb{Z}$, $0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_p$ and $j_1 < \cdots < j_q < k$,

$$\mathcal{Y}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p|j_1,\ldots,j_q} := \mathcal{M}^C_{v,v+i_1} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{M}^C_{v+i_{p-1},s+i_p} \times \mathcal{Y}_{v+i_p,v+j_1} \times \mathcal{M}^D_{v+j_1,v+j_2} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{M}^D_{v+j_q,v+k}.$$

(2) $\mathcal{Y}^{*,*}_{\cdots}[\alpha, f^C_*, \ldots, f^D_*, \ldots, \gamma]$ is defined similarly to (3-10).

(3)   For $\alpha \in h(\mathcal{C}, v)$, we define

$$\dagger(\mathcal{Y}, \alpha, k) := (|\alpha| + y_{v,v+k})(d_{v+k} + 1) \quad \text{and} \quad \ddagger(\mathcal{Y}, \alpha, k) := (|\alpha| + y_{v,v+k} + 1)(d_{v+k} + 1).$$

To state the formula for the homotopy operator Λ^Y, we suppress the subscripts Θ_1 and Θ_2 for simplicity. Let $\alpha \in h(\mathcal{C}, v)$ and $\gamma \in h(\mathcal{D}, v + k)$. Then $\langle \Lambda^Y[\alpha], [\gamma] \rangle_{v+k}$ is defined to be

$$(3\text{-}50) \qquad \sum_{\substack{p,q \geq 0 \\ 0 = i_0 < \cdots < i_p \\ j_1 < \cdots < j_{q+1} = k}} (-1)^{\clubsuit} \mathcal{Y}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | j_1,\ldots,j_q}[\alpha, f^C_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f^D_{v+j_q}, \gamma],$$

where

$$\clubsuit := |\alpha|(c_v + 1) + y_{v+i_p, v+j_1} + \sum_{w=1}^{p} \ddagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_w) + \sum_{w=1}^{q} \ddagger(\mathcal{Y}, \alpha, j_w).$$

Theorem 3.30 *Suppose $\mathcal{Y}$ is an oriented flow homotopy between two oriented flow premorphisms $\mathfrak{F}, \mathfrak{H} \colon \mathcal{C} \Rightarrow \mathcal{D}$. After fixing defining data Θ_1 and Θ_2 for $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$, respectively, there exists an operator $\Lambda^Y_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2} \colon \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}) \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{D})$ defined by (3-50) such that*

$$d^D_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta_2} \circ \Lambda^Y_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2} + \Lambda^Y_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2} \circ d^C_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta_1} + \phi^F_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2} - \phi^H_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2} = 0.$$

Proof   Similar to the proofs of Proposition 3.15 and Theorem 3.21, this theorem follows from the following claim, whose proof is again by induction and will be omitted.

For $\alpha \in h(\mathcal{C}, v)$, $\gamma \in h(\mathcal{D}, v + k)$ with $k \in \mathbb{Z}$, and any $r \geq 0$,

$$0 = \sum_{0 \leq p \leq r} (-1)^{\clubsuit_1} \mathcal{Y}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | j_1,\ldots,j_{r-p}}[\mathrm{d}(\alpha, f^C_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f^D_{v+j_{r-p}}, \gamma)]$$

$$+ \sum_{\substack{0 \leq p \leq q \leq r \\ 1 \leq u \leq p}} (-1)^{\clubsuit_2} \mathrm{Tr}^{v+i_u} \mathcal{Y}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | j_1,\ldots,j_{q-p}}[\alpha, f^C_{v+i_1}, \ldots, \theta \theta^{C*}_{v+i_u}, \ldots, f^D_{v+i_{q-p}}, \gamma]$$

$$+ \sum_{\substack{0 \leq p \leq q \leq r \\ 1 \leq u \leq q-p}} (-1)^{\clubsuit_3} \mathrm{Tr}^{v+j_u} \mathcal{Y}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | j_1,\ldots,j_{q-p}}[\alpha, f^C_{v+i_1}, \ldots, \theta \theta^{D*}_{v+j_u}, \ldots, f^D_{v+i_{q-p}}, \gamma]$$

$$+ \sum_{0 \leq p \leq q < r} (-1)^{\clubsuit_4} (\mathcal{F}^{v,k}|_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | j_1,\ldots,j_{q-p}} - \mathcal{H}^{v,k}|_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | j_1,\ldots,j_{q-p}})[\alpha, f^C_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f^D_{v+j_{q-p}}, \gamma].$$

Here

$$\clubsuit_1 = |\alpha|c_v + y_{v+i_p, v+j_1} + \sum_{w=1}^{p} \dagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_w) + \sum_{w=1}^{r-p} \dagger(\mathcal{Y}, \alpha, j_w),$$

$$\clubsuit_2 = |\alpha|(c_v + 1) + y_{v+i_p, v+j_1} + \sum_{w=1}^{u-1} \ddagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_w) + \sum_{w=u}^{p} \dagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_w) + \sum_{w=1}^{q-p} \dagger(\mathcal{Y}, \alpha, j_w),$$

$$\clubsuit_3 = |\alpha|(c_v + 1) + y_{v+i_p, v+j_1} + \sum_{w=1}^{p} \ddagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_w) + \sum_{w=1}^{u-1} \ddagger(\mathcal{Y}, \alpha, j_w) + \sum_{w=u}^{q-p} \dagger(\mathcal{Y}, \alpha, j_w),$$

$$\clubsuit_4 = |\alpha|c_v + y_{v,v+j_1} + \sum_{w=1}^{p} \ddagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_w) + \sum_{w=1}^{q-p} \dagger(\mathcal{Y}, \alpha, j_w). \qquad \square$$

Remark 3.31 Theorem 3.30 does not require that $\Phi^F_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2}$ or $\Phi^H_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2}$ is a cochain morphism. When they are (in fact, that one of them is a cochain morphism would imply the other is also by Theorem 3.30), Theorem 3.30 implies that they are homotopic to each other.

3.6 The minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex is canonical

Unlike the Morse case, where the defining data is unique, there is a lot of freedom in choosing the defining data for the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex: choices of quasi-isomorphic embeddings, choices of Thom classes and choices of f_i^n. The cochain morphism $\phi^H_{\Theta,\Theta'}$ induced from the flow morphism $\mathfrak{H}$ by (3-34) also depends on Θ and Θ'. Although Theorem 3.10 asserts that the cohomology is independent of the defining data, it is important to have the isomorphism be canonical in a functorial way with respect to the choice of defining data. In this section, we prove that the construction of the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex $(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta})$ is natural with respect to the defining data Θ. Moreover, we will show that the cochain morphism $\phi^H_{\Theta,\Theta'}$ from (3-34) is also canonical in a suitable sense. To explain the claim above in more detail, we introduce the following category of defining data of an oriented flow category:

Definition 3.32 Given an oriented flow category $\mathcal{C}$, $\mathcal{D}ata(\mathcal{C})$ is defined to be the category whose objects are defining data of $\mathcal{C}$, and there is exactly one morphism between any two objects.

For every object Θ in $\mathcal{D}ata(\mathcal{C})$, we can associate it with a cochain complex $(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta})$. The following theorem says that such an assignment can be completed to a functor $\mathcal{D}ata(\mathcal{C}) \to \mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}h)$, where $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}h)$ is the homotopy category of cochain complexes.

Theorem 3.33 There is a functor $\mathcal{BC}(\mathcal{C}) \colon \mathcal{D}ata(\mathcal{C}) \to \mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}h)$ defined by

$$\Theta \mapsto (\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta}) \quad \text{and} \quad (\Theta_1 \to \Theta_2) \mapsto (\phi^I_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2} \colon (\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta_1}) \to (\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta_2})),$$

where $\mathfrak{I}$ is the identity flow morphism used to define $\phi^I_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2}$ by (3-34).

Proof **Step 1** ($\phi^I_{\Theta,\Theta}$ is homotopic to the identity) It is not hard to check that $\phi^{I\circ I}_{\Theta,\Theta}$ can be written as $\mathrm{id} + M$ with M strictly upper triangular. Note that for $i < j$, $I_{i,j} = \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j-i]$ and $(I \circ I)_{i,j} = \bigcup_{k,i \leq k \leq j} I_{i,k} \times_k I_{k,j}$ have an interval direction. Since the pullback of differential forms by source and target maps cannot cover that interval direction, we have

$$I^{v,k}_{\dots,p|q,\dots}[\dots, f_{v+p}, f_{v+q}, \dots] = (I \circ I)^{v,k}_{\dots,p|q,\dots}[\dots, f_{v+p}, f_{v+q}, \dots] = 0 \quad \text{if } p \neq q,$$

$$I^{v,k}_{\dots,p|} = (I \circ I)^{v,k}_{\dots,p|} = 0 \quad \text{if } p \neq k,$$

$$I^{v,k}_{|q,\dots} = (I \circ I)^{v,k}_{|q,\dots} = 0 \quad \text{if } q \neq 0.$$

Therefore, for $k \in \mathbb{N}^+$, $\alpha \in h(\mathcal{C}, v)$ and $\gamma \in h(\mathcal{C}, v+k)$, we have

$$\langle M[\alpha], [\gamma] \rangle_{v+k} = \sum_{\substack{1 \le p \le q \le k \\ 0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_q < k}} (-1)^{\spadesuit_1} I \circ I^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | i_p,\ldots,i_q} [\alpha, f_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f_{v+i_p}, f_{v+i_p}, \ldots, f_{v+i_q}, \gamma]$$

$$+ \sum_{\substack{1 \le p \\ 0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_p = k}} (-1)^{\spadesuit_2} I \circ I^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p |} [\alpha, f_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f_{v+i_p}, f_{v+i_p}, \gamma]$$

$$+ \sum_{\substack{1 \le p \\ 0 = i_1 < \cdots < i_p < k}} (-1)^{\spadesuit_3} I \circ I^{v,k}_{| i_1,\ldots,i_p} [\alpha, f_{v+i_1}, f_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f_{v+i_p}, \gamma],$$

where $\spadesuit_1$, $\spadesuit_2$ and $\spadesuit_3$ are determined according to (3-34).

Similarly, we have a decomposition $\phi^I_{\Theta,\Theta} = \mathrm{id} + N$ with N strictly upper triangular. Note that $(I \circ I)_{v+i_p, v+i_p} = I_{v+i_p, v+i_p} = C_{v+i_p}$, and hence

$$(I \circ I)^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | i_p,\ldots,i_q} [\alpha, f_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f_{v+i_p}, f_{v+i_p}, \ldots, f_{v+i_q}, \gamma]$$

$$= I^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_p | i_p,\ldots,i_q} [\alpha, f_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f_{v+i_p}, f_{v+i_p}, \ldots, f_{v+i_q}, \gamma].$$

Similarly for the remaining two terms of M and N. Thus we have $N = M$. Then by Theorem 3.28,

$$(\mathrm{id} + M) - (\mathrm{id} + M)^2 = P \circ d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta} + d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta} \circ P.$$

Since $\mathrm{id} + M$ is a cochain isomorphism,

$$\mathrm{id} - (\mathrm{id} + M) = (\mathrm{id} + M)^{-1} \circ P \circ d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta} + d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta} \circ (\mathrm{id} + M)^{-1} \circ P.$$

Thus $\mathrm{id} + M = \mathrm{id} + N = \phi^I_{\Theta,\Theta}$ is homotopic to the identity.

Step 2 (functoriality) Given three defining data Θ_1, Θ_2 and Θ_3, by the same argument as above we have, up to homotopy, that

$$\phi^I_{\Theta_1,\Theta_3} = \phi^{I \circ I}_{\Theta_1,\Theta_3}.$$

By Theorem 3.28,

$$\phi^{I \circ I}_{\Theta_1,\Theta_3} - \phi^I_{\Theta_2,\Theta_3} \circ \phi^I_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2} + P \circ d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta_1} + d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta_3} \circ P = 0.$$

Thus $\phi^I_{\Theta_1,\Theta_3}$ is homotopic to $\phi^I_{\Theta_2,\Theta_3} \circ \phi^I_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2}$. $\square$

Remark 3.34 A similar mechanism of proof appeared in [63, Proposition 7.7.4], where the situation is Morse and the auxiliary data (which can be viewed as the analog of the defining data) are choices in the construction of virtual fundamental cycles.

To explain the functoriality for flow morphisms, we introduce the following category:

Definition 3.35 Letting $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ be oriented flow categories, $\mathcal{D}ata(\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D})$ is defined to be the category whose objects are defining data of $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$. There is exactly one morphism from Θ_1 to Θ_2 if Θ_1 and Θ_2 are defining data for the same flow category or Θ_1 and Θ_2 are defining data for $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$, respectively.

Then $\mathcal{D}ata(\mathcal{C})$ and $\mathcal{D}ata(\mathcal{D})$ are full subcategories of $\mathcal{D}ata(\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D})$. If there is an oriented flow morphism $\mathfrak{H}: \mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}$, then for any defining data Θ and Θ' of $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$, respectively, we can assign a cochain morphism $\phi^H_{\Theta,\Theta'}: (\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}), d^C_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta}) \to (\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{D}), d^D_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta'})$. The next theorem states that such an assignment along with $\mathcal{BC}(\mathcal{C})$ and $\mathcal{BC}(\mathcal{D})$ is a functor.

Theorem 3.36 *For an oriented flow morphism $\mathfrak{H}$, there is a functor*

$$\Phi^H : \mathcal{D}ata(\mathcal{C} \to \mathcal{D}) \to \mathcal{K}(\mathcal{Ch})$$

which extends functors $\mathcal{BC}(\mathcal{C})$ and $\mathcal{BC}(\mathcal{D})$ by sending the morphism $\Theta^C \to \Theta^D$ to $\phi^H_{\Theta^C,\Theta^D}$. Here Θ^C and Θ^D are defining data for $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$, respectively.

Proof We only need to prove the functoriality. We use Θ^C and Θ^D to denote defining data for $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$, respectively. By Theorem 3.28, $\phi^{H \circ I}_{\Theta^C_1,\Theta^D}$ is homotopic to both

$$\phi^H_{\Theta^C_2,\Theta^D} \circ \phi^I_{\Theta^C_1,\Theta^C_2} \quad \text{and} \quad \phi^H_{\Theta^C_1,\Theta^D} \circ \phi^I_{\Theta^C_1,\Theta^C_1}.$$

Since, by Theorem 3.33, $\phi^I_{\Theta^C_1,\Theta^C_1}$ is homotopic to the identity, $\phi^H_{\Theta^C_2,\Theta^D} \circ \phi^I_{\Theta^C_1,\Theta^C_2}$ is homotopic to $\phi^H_{\Theta^C_1,\Theta^D}$. Similarly, $\phi^I_{\Theta^D_1,\Theta^D_2} \circ \phi^H_{\Theta^C,\Theta^D_1}$ is homotopic to $\phi^H_{\Theta^C,\Theta^D_2}$. $\square$

3.7 Flow subcategories and flow quotient categories

In this section, we introduce subcategories and quotient categories in the setting of flow categories, which on the cochain complex level correspond to subcomplexes and quotient complexes.

Definition 3.37 Let $\mathcal{C} = \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$ be an oriented flow category. A subset A of $\mathbb{Z}$ is called a $\mathcal{C}$–subset if $j \notin A$ implies $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} = \varnothing$ for all $i \in A$.

A basic example of a $\mathcal{C}$–subset is the set of integers bigger than a fixed number.

Proposition 3.38 Let $\mathcal{C} = \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$ be an oriented flow category and A be a $\mathcal{C}$–subset. Then $\mathcal{C}_A = \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}, i, j \in A\}$ and $\mathcal{C}_{/A} = \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}, i, j \notin A\}$ are flow categories.

Proof It is clear that both $\mathcal{C}_A$ and $\mathcal{C}_{/A}$ are subcategories. Then it is sufficient to prove that the boundary of morphism spaces comes from fiber products of the morphisms spaces for both $\mathcal{C}_A$ and $\mathcal{C}_{/A}$. Since the boundary $\partial \mathcal{M}_{i,k}$ comes from $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{i,k}$, if both $i, k \in A$, then $j \in A$, otherwise one of $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ and $\mathcal{M}_{j,k}$ is empty. Similarly for $\mathcal{C}_{/A}$. $\square$

We will call $\mathcal{C}_A$ a *flow subcategory* and $\mathcal{C}_{/A}$ the associated *flow quotient category*.

Remark 3.39 A finer definition of subcategory is using a subset of components of $\mathrm{Obj}(\mathcal{C})$ such that a similar condition to Definition 3.37 holds.

From Definition 3.8, when the defining data of $\mathcal{C}_A$ and $\mathcal{C}_{/A}$ are restrictions of a defining data on $\mathcal{C}$, we have the tautological short exact sequence

$$(3\text{-}51) \qquad\qquad 0 \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}_A) \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}) \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}_{/A}) \to 0$$

by the obvious inclusion and projection. To make the structure more compatible with concepts introduced here and our future applications [79], we lift the short exact sequence to the flow morphism level. We first introduce the following:

Lemma 3.40 *Assume* $(V_0 \oplus V_1, d)$ *is a cochain complex with the property that* $d(V_0) \subset V_0$, *that is,* d *has a decomposition into* $d_{00} + d_{10} + d_{11}$, *where* $d_{ab} \colon V_a \to V_b$. *Suppose we have another cochain complex* $(V_0' \oplus V_1', d')$ *with the same property. Assume the following squares are commutative up to homotopies* H_1 *and* H_2 *with the property that* $\mathrm{im}\, H_1 \subset V_0'$, $V_0 \subset \ker H_2$ *and the middle morphism* ϕ *has the same decomposition* $\phi_{00} + \phi_{10} + \phi_{11}$, *ie* $\phi(V_0) \subset V_0'$:

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
0 & \longrightarrow & V_0 & \longrightarrow & V_0 \oplus V_1 & \longrightarrow & V_1 & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
& & \downarrow{\psi} & & \downarrow{\phi} & & \downarrow{\eta} & & \\
0 & \longrightarrow & V_0' & \longrightarrow & V_0' \oplus V_1' & \longrightarrow & V_1' & \longrightarrow & 0
\end{array}
$$

Then they induce a morphism between the long exact sequences of cohomology.

Proof We only need to prove the following square is commutative:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
H(V_1) & \xrightarrow{d_{10}} & H(V_0) \\
\downarrow{\eta} & & \downarrow{\psi} \\
H(V_1') & \xrightarrow{d_{10}'} & H(V_0')
\end{array}
$$

By $\mathrm{im}\, H_1 \subset V_0'$ and $V_0 \subset \ker H_2$, we have $\psi = \phi_{00}$ and $\eta = \phi_{11}$ on cohomology. Then the claim follows because the square below is commutative up to the homotopy[21] ϕ_{10}:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
(V_1, d_{11}) & \xrightarrow{d_{10}} & (V_0, -d_{00}) \\
\downarrow{\phi_{11}} & & \downarrow{\phi_{00}} \\
(V_1', d_{11}') & \xrightarrow{d_{10}'} & (V_0', -d_{00}')
\end{array} \qquad \qquad \square
$$

Proposition 3.41 *Let* $\mathcal{C} = \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$ *be an oriented flow category and* A *a* $\mathcal{C}$*–subset. Then we have two flow morphisms* $\mathfrak{I}_A \colon \mathcal{C}_A \Rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ *and* $\mathfrak{P}_A \colon \mathcal{C} \Rightarrow \mathcal{C}_{/A}$, *which induces a short exact sequence* $0 \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}_A) \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}) \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}_{/A}) \to 0$. *The induced long exact sequence is isomorphic to that of* (3-51) *if the defining data for* $\mathcal{C}_A$ *and* $\mathcal{C}_{/A}$ *are the restriction of defining data on* $\mathcal{C}$.

Proof $\mathfrak{I}_A$ is the identity flow morphism of $\mathcal{C}_A$ when the target lands in A, and the empty set otherwise. $\mathfrak{P}_A$ is the identity flow morphism of $\mathcal{C}_{/A}$ when the source lands outside A, and the empty set otherwise. Similar to the proof of Proposition 3.38, both $\mathfrak{I}_A$ and $\mathfrak{P}_A$ are oriented flow morphisms. Since the induced cochain morphism of $\mathfrak{I}_A$ maps $\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}_A)$ isomorphically to the subspace of $\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C})$ generated by $H^*(C_i)$ for $i \in A$, and the induced cochain morphism of $\mathfrak{P}_A$ vanishes on the subspace of $\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C})$ generated by $H^*(C_i)$ for $i \in A$ and maps the subspace generated by $H^*(C_i)$ for $i \notin A$ isomorphically to $\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}_{/A})$,

---

[21] See Remark 3.42 for the explanation of the sign, although it does not affect the map on cohomology.

then we have a short exact sequence as below. Moreover, we claim that we have the diagram of short exact sequences which is commutative up to homotopy

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
0 & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}_A) & \xrightarrow{\phi^{I_A}} & \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}) & \xrightarrow{\phi^{P_A}} & \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}_{/A}) & \longrightarrow & 0 \\
& & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id}} & & \\
0 & \longrightarrow & \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}_A) & \xrightarrow{i} & \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}) & \xrightarrow{\pi} & \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}_{/A}) & \longrightarrow & 0
\end{array}
$$

where the second row is the tautological short sequence (3-51). This is equivalent to proving ϕ^{I_A} is homotopic to inclusion i, and ϕ^{P_A} is homotopic to the projection π. Note that $\phi^{I_A} = i + N$ with N a strict upper triangular matrix and $N = \phi^{I_A} - i = i \circ (\phi^{I_{\mathcal{C}_A}} - \mathrm{id})$. Similar to the proof of Theorem 3.33, we have that $\mathfrak{I}_A \circ \mathfrak{I}_{\mathcal{C}_A}$ and $\mathfrak{I}_A$ induce the same map. Hence $(i + N) \circ (\mathrm{id} + N)$ is homotopic to $i + N$ by Theorem 3.28, and so $i + N$ is homotopic to i if we multiply $(\mathrm{id} + N)^{-1}$ to the right of the homotopy relation. Similarly, ϕ^{P_A} is homotopic to the projection π. It is clear from Theorem 3.28 that those homotopies satisfy the conditions of Lemma 3.40, and hence the claim follows. □

Remark 3.42 The conclusion of Lemma 3.40 can be rephrased as saying that $V_0 \to V_0 \oplus V_1 \to V_1 \to V_0[1]$ and $V_0' \to V_0' \oplus V_1' \to V_1' \to V_0'[1]$ are equivalent distinguished triangles in $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}h)$.[22] In view of Section 3.6, the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex is only well defined in $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}h)$. It is natural to expect that we only get well-defined distinguished triangles in $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}h)$.

Definition 3.43 Let $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ be two oriented flow categories, A a $\mathcal{C}$–subset and B a $\mathcal{D}$–subset. We say an oriented flow morphism $\mathfrak{H}$ maps A to B, if and only if $\mathcal{H}_{i,j} = \varnothing$ whenever $i \in A$ and $j \notin B$.

Proposition 3.44 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ be two oriented flow categories, A a $\mathcal{C}$–subset and B a $\mathcal{D}$–subset. Assume an oriented flow morphism $\mathfrak{H}$ maps A to B. Then we have oriented flow morphisms $\mathfrak{H}_A \colon \mathcal{C}_A \Rightarrow \mathcal{D}_B$ and $\mathfrak{H}_{/A} \colon \mathcal{C}_{/A} \Rightarrow \mathcal{D}_{/B}$, and on the cochain level they induce a morphism between the long exact sequences.*

Proof The restriction of $\mathfrak{H}$ is $\mathfrak{H}_A$ when the source and target land in A and B, respectively. $\mathfrak{H}_{/A}$ is the restriction of $\mathfrak{H}$ when source and target land in complements of A and B respectively. Then $\mathfrak{H}_A$ and $\mathfrak{H}_{/A}$ are flow morphisms by a direct check similar to Proposition 3.38. We define $\mathfrak{F}$ to be the flow morphism from $\mathcal{C}_A$ to $\mathcal{D}$ which is the restriction of $\mathfrak{H}$ to $\mathcal{C}_A$. Since $\mathcal{H}_{i,j} = \varnothing$ whenever $i \in A$ and $j \notin B$, we have that $\mathfrak{H}$ must land in $\mathcal{D}_B$. Then by the same argument as in Theorem 3.33, $\mathfrak{H} \circ \mathfrak{I}_A$, $\mathfrak{I}_B \circ \mathfrak{H}_A$ and $\mathfrak{F}$ induce the same cochain morphism. Then Theorem 3.28 implies that both $\phi^H \circ \phi^{I_A}$ and $\phi^{I_B} \circ \phi^{H_A}$ are homotopic to $\phi^{\mathfrak{F}}$. Similarly, $\phi^{H/A} \circ \phi^{P_A}$ and $\phi^{P_B} \circ \phi^H$ are homotopic. It is clear that the homotopies and ϕ^H satisfy the conditions in Lemma 3.40, and hence the claim follows. □

Remark 3.45 It is clear that the identity flow morphism maps A to A. Hence Proposition 3.44 implies that the long exact sequence from Proposition 3.41 is independent of the defining data and is isomorphic to the long exact sequence induced from (3-51).

---

[22]When (V, d) is ungraded, $V[1]$ simply means $(V, -d)$.

4 The action spectral sequence

Given a Morse–Bott function on a closed manifold M, there is a spectral sequence converging to $H^*(M)$ with the first page generated by the cohomology of critical manifolds (sometimes twisted by a local system). Such a spectral sequence is sometimes referred to as the Morse–Bott spectral sequence. For flow categories, Austin and Braam's construction [3] comes with a spectral sequence, which is induced by the an action filtration. Moreover, it was shown under the fibration condition that the spectral sequence from Austin and Braam's construction (from the first page) is isomorphic to the Morse–Bott spectral sequence. Similar spectral sequences from action filtration in Floer theory can be found in many places, eg [70]. Often the spectral sequence is an invariant of the Morse–Bott function, ie independent of other auxiliary structures. For example, in the finite-dimensional Morse–Bott theory, any reasonable construction should recover the Morse–Bott spectral sequence, which can be constructed using only the Morse–Bott function in a purely topological manner.

The goal of this section is to prove those results for the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex. The existences of an "action" filtration is encoded in the definition of a flow category by requiring $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} = \varnothing$ for $i > j$, since we secretly order C_i by their critical values of the hypothetical Morse–Bott functional. For basics of spectral sequences arising from filtrations, we refer readers to [55; 75].

Letting $\mathcal{C} := \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$ be an oriented flow category, we have the following "action" filtration on the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex BC:

$$F_p\mathrm{BC} := \prod_{i \geq p} H^*(C_i) \subset F_{p-1}\mathrm{BC} \subset \mathrm{BC}.$$

It is clear from definition that the differential $d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta}$ is compatible with this filtration for any defining data Θ. The associated spectral sequence can be described explicitly as follows. We define Z_{k+1}^p to be the space of $\alpha_0 \in H^*(C_p)$ such that there exist $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \ldots, \alpha_{k-1} \in H^*(C_*)$ with (we suppress the subscript Θ in $d_{i,\Theta}$ for simplicity)

(4-1)
$$d_1\alpha_0 = 0,$$
$$d_2\alpha_0 + d_1\alpha_1 = 0,$$
$$d_3\alpha_0 + d_2\alpha_1 + d_1\alpha 12 = 0,$$
$$\vdots$$
$$d_k\alpha_0 + d_{k-1}\alpha_1 + \cdots + d_1\alpha_{k-1} = 0.$$

We define B_{k+1}^p to be the space of $\alpha \in H^*(C_p)$ such that there exist $\alpha_0, \alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_{k-1} \in H^*(C_*)$ with

(4-2)
$$\alpha = d_k\alpha_0 + d_{k-1}\alpha_1 + \cdots + d_1\alpha_{k-1},$$
$$0 = d_{k-1}\alpha_0 + d_{k-2}\alpha_1 + \cdots + d_1\alpha_{k-2},$$
$$\vdots$$
$$0 = d_1\alpha_0.$$

On Z_{k+1}^p / B_{k+1}^p, there is a map $\partial_{k+1} \colon Z_{k+1}^p / B_{k+1}^p \to Z_{k+1}^{p+k+1} / B_{k+1}^{p+k+1}$ defined by $\partial_{k+1} \alpha_0 := d_{k+1} \alpha_0 + d_k \alpha_1 + \cdots + d_2 \alpha_{k-1}$. Since the differential on the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex has the special form $\prod d_i$, unwrapping Leray's theorem on the spectral sequence associated to a filtered complex, we have the following:

Proposition 4.1 [55] *Following the notation above,*

$$B_1^p \subset B_2^p \subset \cdots \subset B_k^p \subset \bigcup_k B_k^p = B_\infty^p \subset Z_\infty^p = \bigcap_k Z_k^p \subset \cdots \subset Z_k^p \subset \ldots \subset Z_2^p \subset Z_1^p.$$

Additionally, ∂_k is a well-defined map from Z_k^p / B_k^p to $Z_k^{p+k+1} / B_k^{p+k+1}$ such that $\partial_k^2 = 0$ and $Z_{k+1}^p / B_{k+1}^p \simeq H^p(Z_k / B_k, \partial_k)$. Here we view the superscript p as a grading and then ∂_k has grading $k+1$ on Z_k / B_k. Hence we have a spectral sequence $(E_k^p := Z_k^p / B_k^p, \partial_k)$ with

$$E_\infty^p := Z_\infty^p / B_\infty^p \simeq F_p H(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC}}) / F_{p+1} H(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC}}),$$

where $F_p H(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC}})$ is the associated filtration on the cohomology of $(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC}})$. In other words, the spectral sequence (E_k^p, ∂_k) is the spectral sequence induced from the filtration $F_p \mathrm{BC}$.

Remark 4.2 Since we do not assume $\mathcal{C}$ carries a grading structure, we do not have a grading on BC (as well as its relation to the natural degree on $H^*(C_*)$) in general. In particular, we will not get a multicomplex in [4]. The cost is that we cannot further refine the spectral sequence in E_k^p using their degrees on $H^*(C_p)$.

The second page of the spectral sequence is computed by taking the cohomology with respect to $\partial_1 = d_1$ in (3-15). Since d_1 is computed using $\mathcal{M}_{*,*+1}$, which are manifolds without boundary, d_1 is simply the pullback and pushforward of cohomology. It is more accessible in good cases; works in this direction using cascades constructions can be found in [20; 21]. In general, even though d_i depends on defining data in general for $i \geq 2$, ∂_i does not for any i.

Proposition 4.3 *Every page of the spectral sequence is independent of the defining data.*

Proof The identity flow morphism $\mathfrak{I}$ induces a cochain map $\phi_{\Theta_1,\Theta_2}^I \colon (\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta_1}) \to (\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC},\Theta_2})$. The cochain map ϕ^I preserves the filtrations, thus it induces a morphism between spectral sequences. Since the induced map on the zeroth page is the identity it induces isomorphisms on every page. $\qquad\square$

Remark 4.4 Proposition 4.3 only asserts the invariance of the spectral sequence with respect to defining data for a fixed flow category. However, the spectral sequence is expected to be an invariant of the hypothetical Morse–Bott functional, ie independent of other choices (metrics, almost-complex structures, abstract perturbations) in the construction of the flow category. To prove this claim, one needs to study the underlying moduli problem and deploy some virtual techniques. We will touch on this aspect of the theory briefly in Section 9. The spectral sequence is also expected to be independent of the specific construction method. It is an interesting question to find applications of those invariants, particularly in the quantitative aspects of symplectic geometry like symplectic embedding problems.

The final page of the spectral sequence only recovers the associated graded of the cohomology with respect to the induced filtration. We define

$$E_\infty := \varprojlim_p \varinjlim_q \bigoplus_{i=q}^p E_\infty^i,$$

ie the direct sum at the negative end and the direct limit at the positive end of E_∞^i. Following [55, Proof of Lemma 3.10], we have the following exact sequence (note that we are using field coefficients):

$$0 \to \varprojlim_p F_p H(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC}}) \to H(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC}}) \to E_\infty \to \varprojlim_p{}^1 F_p H(\mathrm{BC}, d_{\mathrm{BC}}) \to 0.$$

In some good cases, like $F_p\mathrm{BC} = 0$ for $p \gg 0$, E_∞ is (noncanonically) isomorphic to the Morse–Bott cohomology. For example, the symplectic cohomology considered in [70] satisfies this condition, as the symplectic action is bounded from above.

5 Orientations and local systems

The aim of this section is explaining how orientation conventions in Definitions 2.15, 3.18 and 3.29 arise in applications. In applications like Morse or Floer theories, coherent orientations usually use extra structures from the moduli problem, namely the gluing theorem for the determinant line bundles of Fredholm sections; see [31]. Similar properties and constructions exist in Floer theories of different flavors beyond cohomology theory, eg [13; 34; 71]. In this section, we explain the structure which is necessary for the existence of coherent orientations on flow categories and how they arise in applications. Then we generalize the construction of the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex to flow categories with local systems, where critical manifolds C_i can be nonorientable.

5.1 Orientations for flow categories

5.1.1 Orientations in the Morse case We first review how coherent orientations arise in the construction of Hamiltonian Floer cohomology in the nondegenerate (Morse) case following [1]. We will not just orient 0– and 1–dimensional moduli spaces but all of them, and show that they satisfy Definition 2.15. Assume a symplectic manifold (M, ω) is symplectically aspherical, that is, $\omega|_{\pi_2(M)} = 0$. Let $H_t \colon S^1 \times M \to \mathbb{R}$ be a Hamiltonian such that all contractible 1–periodic orbits of the Hamiltonian vector field X_{H_t} are nondegenerate. For simplicity, we assume that every moduli space of Floer cylinders is cut out transversely. We note here that the orientation problem is independent from many other aspects of the theory, and in particular, the transversality problem.[23] In other words, we have a flow category $\{x_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$, where x_i is a nondegenerate contractible periodic orbit and $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ is the *compactified* moduli space of Floer cylinders from x_i to x_j, where the symplectic action of x_i is smaller than that of x_j if and only if $i < j$.

---

[23]In the nontransverse case, the discussion of the determinant line bundle below can be lifted to the underlying Banach manifolds/polyfolds. However, when transversality holds, there is a canonical isomorphism depending on the section/perturbation from the determinant bundle of the moduli space to $o_{i,j}$ that it is compatible with gluing, ie (4) and (5).

To orient $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ in a coherent way such that Definition 2.15 holds, we recall the following extra structures that can be associated to the moduli spaces $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ in the Hamiltonian Floer cohomology:

(1) For every periodic orbit x_i, we can assign an orientation line o_i with a $\mathbb{Z}/2$ grading. Such a line is constructed from the determinant line of a perturbed $\bar{\partial}$ operator over $\mathbb{C}$ with one positive end at infinity [1, (1.4.8)] and the grading is the index of the operator (modulo 2).

(2) For every point in $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$, there is an orientation line with a $\mathbb{Z}/2$ grading coming from the determinant line bundle of the linearized Floer equation at that point. All these lines form a line bundle $o_{i,j}$ over $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$. We refer readers to [80] for the topology on the determinant bundle.

(3) By the gluing theorem for linear Fredholm operators [1, Lemma 1.4.5], we have a grading-preserving isomorphism over $\mathcal{M}_{x,y}$:

$$(5\text{-}1) \qquad\qquad \rho_{i,j} : s^* o_i \otimes o_{i,j} \to t^* o_j.$$

Over $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \subset \partial \mathcal{M}_{i,k}$, there is a grading-preserving isomorphism

$$\rho_{i,j,k} : \pi_1^* o_{i,j} \otimes \pi_2^* o_{j,k} \to o_{i,k},$$

where π_1 and π_2 are the two projections. Note that $\rho_{i,j}$ and $\rho_{i,j,k}$ are compatible in the sense that there is commutative diagram over $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times \mathcal{M}_{j,k}$ up to multiplying by a positive number:

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccc}
s^* o_i \otimes \pi_1^* o_{i,j} \otimes \pi_2^* o_{j,k} & \xrightarrow{\rho_{i,j} \otimes \mathrm{id}} & \pi_1^* t^* o_j \otimes \pi_2^* o_{j,k} & = \pi_2^* s^* o_j \otimes \pi_2^* o_{j,k} & \xrightarrow{\pi_2^* \rho_{j,k}} & \pi_2^* t^* o_k & = t^* o_k \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \mathrm{id} \otimes \rho_{i,j,k}} & & & & & & \downarrow \\
s^* o_i \otimes o_{i,k} & & & \xrightarrow{\quad\rho_{i,k}\quad} & & & t^* o_k
\end{array}
$$

(4) Let $\bar{\partial}_{i,j}$ be the Floer operator cutting out $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$. When transversality holds for every moduli space, $\ker \mathrm{D}\bar{\partial}_{i,j}$ is a vector bundle over $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$. Then $\ker \mathrm{D}\bar{\partial}_{i,j}$ contains an oriented trivial line subbundle $\mathbb{R}$ induced by the $\mathbb{R}$ translation action, and

$$(5\text{-}2) \qquad\qquad \ker \mathrm{D}\bar{\partial}_{i,j} = T\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \oplus \mathbb{R}.$$

Moreover, we have a grading-preserving isomorphism $\phi_{i,j} : o_{i,j} \to \det \ker \mathrm{D}\bar{\partial}_{i,j}$.

(5) On $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times \mathcal{M}_{j,k}$, we have an isomorphism $\ker \mathrm{D}\bar{\partial}_{i,j} \oplus \ker \mathrm{D}\bar{\partial}_{j,k} \xrightarrow{\phi} \ker \mathrm{D}\bar{\partial}_{i,k}$ and the following diagram commutes (we suppress the pullbacks):

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
o_{i,j} \otimes o_{j,k} & \xrightarrow{\rho_{i,j,k}} & o_{i,k} \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \phi_{i,j} \otimes \phi_{j,k}} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \phi_{i,k}} \\
\det \ker \mathrm{D}\bar{\partial}_{i,j} \otimes \det \ker \mathrm{D}\bar{\partial}_{j,k} & \xrightarrow{\det \phi} & \det \ker \mathrm{D}\bar{\partial}_{i,k}
\end{array}
$$

(6) Let $\mathbb{R}_r$, $\mathbb{R}_s$ and $\mathbb{R}_t$ be the trivial subbundles in $\ker \mathrm{D}\bar{\partial}_{i,j}$, $\ker \mathrm{D}\bar{\partial}_{j,k}$ and $\ker \mathrm{D}\bar{\partial}_{i,k}$, respectively. Then by [1, Lemma 1.5.7],

$$(5\text{-}3) \qquad \phi(\langle r, s \rangle) = t \quad \text{and} \quad \phi(\langle -r, s \rangle) \text{ is pointing out along } \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \subset \partial \mathcal{M}_{i,k} \text{ in } (5\text{-}2).$$

Proposition 5.1 *If we fix an orientation for every o_i, then* (3) *and* (4) *determine an orientation of $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ and $[\mathcal{M}_{i,j}][\mathcal{M}_{j,k}] = (-1)^{m_{i,j}+1} \partial [\mathcal{M}_{i,k}]|_{\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times \mathcal{M}_{j,k}}$.*

Proof Given orientations of o_i, the isomorphism $\rho_{i,j}$ determines an orientation of $o_{i,j}$. Then by (4) and $\phi_{i,j}$, there is an induced orientation $[\mathcal{M}_{i,j}]$. We claim this orientation satisfies the claimed relation. By (3), $\rho_{i,j,k}$ preserves the orientations. Therefore $\phi \colon \ker D\bar{\partial}_{i,j} \oplus \ker D\bar{\partial}_{j,k} \to \ker D\bar{\partial}_{i,k}$ preserves the orientations. That is, $[\mathcal{M}_{i,j}][\mathbb{R}_r][\mathcal{M}_{j,k}][\mathbb{R}_s] = [\mathcal{M}_{i,k}][\mathbb{R}_t]$. Then by (6), we have $[\mathcal{M}_{i,j}][\mathcal{M}_{j,k}] = (-1)^{m_{i,j}+1} \partial [\mathcal{M}_{i,k}]|_{\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times \mathcal{M}_{j,k}}$. $\qquad\square$

Orientations from Proposition 5.1 can be used to prove $d^2 = 0$ for Hamiltonian Floer cohomology in the nondegenerate case. Moreover, orientations $-[\mathcal{M}_{i,j}]$ fit into the orientation convention in Definition 2.15.

5.1.2 Orientations in the Morse–Bott case We should expect similar structures and properties in Morse–Bott theories. We phrase the structures as a definition and explain how to get an oriented flow category from there. Before stating the definition, we introduce some notation:

(1) Let $E \to M$ be a vector bundle. Then $\det E := \bigwedge^{\max} E$ with $\mathbb{Z}/2$ grading rank E (mod 2). We write $\det C := \det TC$.

(2) For $\mathbb{Z}/2$ graded line bundles o_1 and o_2, unless stated otherwise the map $o_1 \otimes o_2 \to o_2 \otimes o_1$ is defined by

(5-4) $$v_1 \otimes v_2 \to (-1)^{|o_1| \cdot |o_2|} v_2 \otimes v_1$$

for vectors v_1 and v_2 in o_1 and o_2, respectively.

(3) Let Δ be the diagonal in $C \times C$ with normal bundle N. Unless stated otherwise, $\det \Delta \otimes \det N \to \det C \otimes \det C$ on Δ is the map induced by the isomorphism $T\Delta \oplus N \to TC \oplus TC$. In particular, if we orient N following Example 2.8, such a map preserves orientations.

Definition 5.2 An *orientation structure* on a flow category $\mathcal{C} = \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$ consists of the following structures:

(1) There are topological line bundles o_i over C_i with $\mathbb{Z}/2$ gradings for every C_i, and topological line bundles $o_{i,j}$ over $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ with $\mathbb{Z}/2$ gradings for every $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$.

(2) There is a grading-preserving bundle isomorphism over $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$

(5-5) $$\rho_{i,j} \colon s^* o_i \otimes s^* \det C_i \otimes o_{i,j} \to t^* o_j,$$

and a grading-preserving bundle isomorphism over $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \subset \partial \mathcal{M}_{i,k}$

(5-6) $$\rho_{i,j,k} \colon \pi_1^* o_{i,j} \otimes (t \times s)^* \det T\Delta_j \otimes \pi_2^* o_{j,k} \to o_{i,k}|_{\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}}.$$

The bundle isomorphisms are compatible in the sense that the following diagram over $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}$ is commutative up to multiplying by a positive number:

(5-7)
$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
s^*o_i \otimes s^* \det C_i \otimes \pi_1^* o_{i,j} \otimes (t \times s)^* \det \Delta_j \otimes \pi_2^* o_{j,k} & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{id} \otimes \rho_{i,j,k}} & s^*o_i \otimes s^* \det C_i \otimes o_{i,k} \\
\downarrow \rho_{i,j} \otimes \mathrm{id} & & \\
\pi_2^* s^* o_j \otimes \pi_2^* s^* \det C_j \otimes \pi_2^* o_{j,k} & & \downarrow \rho_{i,k} \\
\downarrow \pi_2^* \rho_{j,k} & & \\
t^* o_k & \longrightarrow & t^* o_k
\end{array}
$$

The diagram makes sense because over the fiber product $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}$, we have $\pi_1^* t^* o_j = \pi_2^* s^* o_j$ and $(t \times s)^* \det \Delta_j = \pi_2^* s^* \det C_j$.

(3) There are vector bundles $V_{i,j}$ over $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ with smooth bundle maps

$$
S_{i,j} \colon V_{i,j} \to TC_i \quad \text{and} \quad T_{i,j} \colon V_{i,j} \to TC_j
$$

covering $s_{i,j} \colon \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \to C_i$ and $t_{i,j} \colon \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \to C_j$, respectively. Moreover, there is an oriented trivial subbundle $\underline{\mathbb{R}}$ of $V_{i,j}$ such that $S_{i,j}(\underline{\mathbb{R}}) = T_{i,j}(\underline{\mathbb{R}}) = 0$,

(5-8)
$$
V_{i,j} = T\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \oplus \underline{\mathbb{R}},
$$

$S_{i,j}|_{T\mathcal{M}_{i,j}} = \mathrm{d}s_{i,j}$ and $T_{i,j}|_{T\mathcal{M}_{i,j}} = \mathrm{d}t_{i,j}$. There is a grading-preserving isomorphism

(5-9)
$$
\phi_{i,j} \colon s^* \det C_i \otimes o_{i,j} \otimes t^* \det C_j \to \det V_{i,j}.
$$

(4) On $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}$ we have $V_{i,j} \times_{TC_j} V_{j,k} = V_{i,k}$, and the following diagram commutes, where the last map is induced by the isomorphism $V_{i,j} \oplus V_{j,k} = (t \times s)^* N_j \oplus V_{i,k}$:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
(t \times s)^* \det N_j \otimes s^* \det C_i \otimes o_{i,j} \otimes (t \times s)^* \det \Delta_j \otimes o_{j,k} \otimes t^* \det C_k & \xrightarrow{\rho_{i,j,k}} & (t \times s)^* \det N_j \otimes s^* \det C_i \otimes o_{i,k} \otimes t^* \det C_k \\
\downarrow & & \\
s^* \det C_i \otimes o_{i,j} \otimes (t \times s)^* (\det \Delta_j \otimes \det N_j) \otimes o_{j,k} \otimes t^* \det C_k & & \downarrow \phi_{i,k} \\
\downarrow & & \\
s^* \det C_i \otimes o_{i,j} \otimes t^* \det C_j \otimes s^* \det C_j \otimes o_{j,k} \otimes t^* \det C_k & & \\
\downarrow \phi_{i,j} \otimes \phi_{j,k} & & \\
\det V_{i,j} \otimes \det V_{j,k} & \longrightarrow & (t \times s)^* \det N_j \otimes \det V_{i,k}
\end{array}
$$

(5) Let $\underline{\mathbb{R}}_r$, $\underline{\mathbb{R}}_s$ and $\underline{\mathbb{R}}_t$ be the trivial subbundles in $V_{i,j}$, $V_{j,k}$ and $V_{i,j}$, respectively. We have

(5-10)
$$
\langle r, s \rangle = t \quad \text{and} \quad \langle -r, s \rangle \text{ is pointing out along } \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \subset \partial \mathcal{M}_{i,k}.
$$

In applications, the topological line bundle o_i is the determinant line bundle of a perturbed Floer equation with exponential decay at the end over a domain with one positive end. For details on exponential decay,

we refer readers to [12; 32]. The topological line bundle $o_{i,j}$ usually comes from the determinant bundle of the Floer equation with exponential decay at both ends over a cylinder. The bundle isomorphism and its compatible diagram come from a version of the linear gluing theorem for Fredholm operators [1; 31]. $V_{i,j}$ is the kernel of the linearized Floer operator defining $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ and the trivial subbundle comes from the $\mathbb{R}$ translation. The last condition (5) comes from a similar argument as in [1, Lemma 1.5.7]. The bundle $o_{i,j}$ can be defined on the background Banach manifold or polyfolds [44, Chapter 6], however $V_{i,j}$ is defined only when transversality holds. Definition 5.2(3) states the relation between $V_{i,j}$, $o_{i,j}$ and $T\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$, and (4) states the compatibility with the gluing map $\rho_{i,j,k}$.

Remark 5.3 Similar to Definition 2.13, Definition 5.2 is a simplified version. In general, we should associate each component of C_i with a line bundle and each component of $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ with a bundle isomorphism satisfying similar compatibility conditions.

Remark 5.4 Definition 5.2 is modeled on the classical treatment of the Floer equation [12; 32]. That is, we mod out the $\mathbb{R}$ translation after solving the Floer equation. Hence we expect that bundles $V_{i,j}$ over $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ contain a trivial oriented $\mathbb{R}$ direction. If we use the polyfold setup, then the Floer operator is defined on polyfolds of cylinders with the $\mathbb{R}$ translation already quotiented out; see [26; 73]. One can adjust Definition 5.2 to be consistent with such a point of view.

Proposition 5.5 *Assume the flow category $\mathcal{C}$ has an orientation structure, all the line bundles o_i are oriented and all C_i are oriented. Then $\mathcal{C}$ can be coherently oriented.*

Proof By the map $\rho_{i,j}$ in (5-5), if the o_i and C_i are oriented, then there are induced orientations $[o_{i,j}]$ on $o_{i,j}$. By (5-7), over the fiber product $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}$ we have

$$(5\text{-}11) \qquad\qquad \rho_{i,j,k}(\pi_1^*[o_{i,j}] \otimes (t \times s)^*[\Delta_j] \otimes \pi_2^*[o_{j,k}]) = [o_{i,k}].$$

Using $\phi_{i,j}$ in Definition 5.2(4), we have an orientation $[V_{i,j}]$ on $V_{i,j}$. Then by (5-11), the commutative diagram in Definition 5.2(4) implies that the natural map $V_{i,j} \oplus V_{j,k} \to (t \times s)^* N_j \times V_{i,k}$ induces

$$[V_{i,j}] \otimes [V_{j,k}] \mapsto (-1)^{c_j(m_{i,j}+1)}(t \times s)^*[N_j] \otimes [V_{i,k}]$$

on the prescribed orientations. By Definition 5.2(3), the orientation $[V_{i,j}]$ induces an orientation $[\mathcal{M}_{i,j}]$. Hence on $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \subset \partial \mathcal{M}_{i,k}$,

$$[\mathcal{M}_{i,j}][\mathbb{R}_r][\mathcal{M}_{j,k}][\mathbb{R}_s] = (-1)^{c_j(m_{i,j}+1)}(t \times s)^*[N_j][\mathcal{M}_{i,k}][\mathbb{R}_t].$$

Then Definition 5.2(5) implies that

$$[\mathcal{M}_{i,j}][\mathcal{M}_{j,k}] = (-1)^{c_j m_{i,j}+m_{i,j}+1}(t \times s)^*[N_j]\partial[\mathcal{M}_{i,k}]|_{\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}}.$$

Then the orientations $-[\mathcal{M}_{i,j}]$ satisfy Definition 2.15.[24]   □

---

[24]One can certainly modify the definition of coherent orientations of a flow category (Definition 2.15) so that $[\mathcal{M}_{i,j}]$ gives a coherent orientation. Then the signs in (3-15) do not factorize nicely.

When the o_i are not oriented or the C_i are not oriented, Definition 5.2 gives all the structures we need to work with the local system o_i. We discuss such generalization in Section 5.2.

5.1.3 Orientations for flow morphisms We explain how the orientation convention in Definition 3.18 arise in application.

Definition 5.6 Assume $\mathfrak{H} = \{\mathcal{H}_{i,j}\}$ is a flow morphism from flow category $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$ such that $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ have orientation structures. A compatible orientation structure on $\mathfrak{H}$ is the following:

(1) There are $\mathbb{Z}/2$ graded line bundles $o_{i,j}^H$ over $\mathcal{H}_{i,j}$. Over $\mathcal{H}_{i,j}$, we have a grading-preserving isomorphism

$$(5\text{-}12) \qquad \rho_{i,j}^H : s^* o_i^C \otimes s^* \det C_i \otimes o_{i,j}^H \to t^* o_j^D.$$

(2) Over the fiber product $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}^C \times_j \mathcal{H}_{j,k} \subset \partial \mathcal{H}_{i,k}$, we have a grading-preserving isomorphism

$$(5\text{-}13) \qquad \rho_{i,j,k}^{C,H} : \pi_1^* o_{i,j}^C \otimes (t \times s)^* \det \Delta_j^C \otimes \pi_2^* o_{j,k}^H \to o_{i,k}^H.$$

Over the fiber product $\mathcal{H}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}^D \subset \partial \mathcal{H}_{i,k}$, we have a grading-preserving isomorphism

$$(5\text{-}14) \qquad \rho_{i,j,k}^{H,D} : \pi_1^* o_{i,j}^H \otimes (t \times s)^* \det \Delta_j^D \otimes \pi_2^* o_{j,k}^D \to o_{i,k}^H.$$

(3) The bundle isomorphisms in (1) and (2) are compatible in the sense that over $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}^C \times_j \mathcal{H}_{j,k}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}^D$, we have the commutative diagrams

$$(5\text{-}15)$$

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
s^* o_i^C \otimes s^* \det C_i \otimes \pi_1^* o_{i,j}^C \otimes (t \times s)^* \det \Delta_j^C \otimes \pi_2^* o_{j,k}^H & \xrightarrow{\ \mathrm{id} \otimes \rho_{i,j,k}^{C,H}\ } & s^* o_i^C \otimes s^* \det C_i \otimes o_{i,k}^H \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho_{i,j}^C \otimes \mathrm{id}} & & \\
\pi_2^* s^* o_j^D \otimes \pi_2^* s^* \det D_j \otimes \pi_2^* o_{j,k}^D & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho_{i,k}^H} \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho_{j,k}^H} & & \\
t^* o_k & \xrightarrow{\hspace{6cm}} & t^* o_k
\end{array}
$$

and

$$(5\text{-}16)$$

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
s^* o_i^C \otimes s^* \det C_i \otimes \pi_1^* o_{i,j}^H \otimes (t \times s)^* \det \Delta_j^D \otimes \pi_2^* o_{j,k}^D & \xrightarrow{\ \mathrm{id} \otimes \rho_{i,j,k}^{H,D}\ } & s^* o_i^C \otimes s^* \det C_i \otimes o_{i,k}^H \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho_{i,j}^H \otimes \mathrm{id}} & & \\
\pi_2^* s^* o_j^D \otimes \pi_2^* s^* \det D_j \otimes \pi_2^* o_{j,k}^D & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho_{i,k}^H} \\
\downarrow{\scriptstyle \rho_{j,k}^D} & & \\
t^* o_k & \xrightarrow{\hspace{6cm}} & t^* o_k
\end{array}
$$

respectively.

(4) There is a grading-preserving isomorphism $\phi_{i,j}^{H}\colon s^{*}\det C_{i}\otimes o_{i,j}^{H}\otimes t^{*}\det D_{j}\to\det T\mathcal{H}_{i,j}$.

(5) On $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}^{C}\times_{j}\mathcal{H}_{j,k}\subset\partial\mathcal{H}_{i,k}$ we have $V_{i,j}^{C}\times_{TC_{j}}T\mathcal{H}_{j,k}=T\mathcal{H}_{i,k}$, and the following diagram commutes, where the last row is induced by the isomorphism $V_{i,j}^{C}\oplus T\mathcal{H}_{j,k}\to(t\times s)^{*}N_{j}^{C}\oplus T\mathcal{H}_{i,k}$:

$$(t\times s)\det N_{j}^{C}\otimes s^{*}\det C_{i}\otimes o_{i,j}^{C}\otimes(t\times s)^{*}\det\Delta_{j}^{C}\otimes o_{j,k}^{H}\otimes t^{*}\det D_{k}\xrightarrow{\rho_{i,j,k}^{C,H}}(t\times s)^{*}\det N_{j}^{C}\otimes s^{*}\det C_{i}\otimes o_{i,k}^{H}\otimes t^{*}\det D_{k}$$

$$s^{*}\det C_{i}\otimes o_{i,j}^{C}\otimes(t\times s)^{*}(\det\Delta_{j}^{C}\otimes N_{j}^{C})\otimes o_{j,k}^{H}\otimes t^{*}\det D_{k}$$

$$\phi_{i,k}^{H}$$

$$s^{*}\det C_{i}\otimes o_{i,j}^{C}\otimes t^{*}\det C_{j}\otimes s^{*}\det C_{j}\otimes o_{j,k}^{H}\otimes t^{*}\det D_{k}$$

$$\phi_{i,j}^{C}\otimes\phi_{j,k}^{H}$$

$$\det V_{i,j}^{C}\otimes\det T\mathcal{H}_{j,k}\longrightarrow(t\times s)^{*}\det N_{j}^{C}\otimes\det T\mathcal{H}_{i,k}$$

On $\mathcal{H}_{i,j}\times_{j}\mathcal{M}_{j,k}^{D}\subset\partial\mathcal{H}_{i,k}$, we have $T\mathcal{H}_{i,j}\times_{TD_{j}}V_{j,k}^{D}=T\mathcal{H}_{i,k}$, and the following diagram commutes, where the last row is induced by the isomorphism $T\mathcal{H}_{i,j}\oplus V_{j,k}^{D}\to(t\times s)^{*}N_{j}^{D}\oplus T\mathcal{H}_{i,k}$:

$$(t\times s)\det N_{j}^{D}\otimes s^{*}\det C_{i}\otimes o_{i,j}^{H}\otimes(t\times s)^{*}\det\Delta_{j}^{D}\otimes o_{j,k}^{D}\otimes t^{*}\det D_{k}\xrightarrow{\rho_{i,j,k}^{H,D}}(t\times s)^{*}\det N_{j}^{D}\otimes s^{*}\det C_{i}\otimes o_{i,k}^{H}\otimes t^{*}\det D_{k}$$

$$s^{*}\det C_{i}\otimes o_{i,j}^{H}\otimes(t\times s)^{*}(\det\Delta_{j}^{D}\otimes N_{j}^{D})\otimes o_{j,k}^{D}\otimes t^{*}\det D_{k}$$

$$\phi_{i,k}^{H}$$

$$s^{*}\det C_{i}\otimes o_{i,j}^{H}\otimes t^{*}\det D_{j}\otimes s^{*}\det D_{j}\otimes o_{j,k}^{D}\otimes t^{*}\det D_{k}$$

$$\phi_{i,j}^{H}\otimes\phi_{j,k}^{D}$$

$$\det T\mathcal{H}_{i,j}\otimes\det V_{j,k}^{D}\longrightarrow(t\times s)^{*}\det N_{j}^{D}\otimes\det T\mathcal{H}_{i,k}$$

(6) Let $\mathbb{R}_{s}$ and $\mathbb{R}_{t}$ be the trivial lines in $V_{i,j}^{C}$ and $V_{j,k}^{D}$, respectively. Then s points in along $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}^{C}\times_{j}\mathcal{H}_{j,k}\subset\partial\mathcal{H}_{i,k}$ and t points out along $\mathcal{H}_{i,j}\times_{j}\mathcal{M}_{j,k}^{D}\subset\partial\mathcal{H}_{i,k}$.

In the example of Hamiltonian Floer cohomology for nondegenerate Hamiltonians, the bundle $o_{i,j}^{H}$ is the determinant line bundle of the time-dependent Floer equation [2, page 384]. In the Morse–Bott case, $o_{i,j}^{H}$ is the determinant line bundle of the time-dependent Floer equation with exponential decay at both ends. By the same argument as in Proposition 5.5, we have the following:

Proposition 5.7 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ be two flow categories with orientation structures and $\mathfrak{H}$ be a flow morphism from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$ with a compatible orientation structure. Assume o_{i}^{C}, o_{i}^{D}, C_{i} and D_{i} are oriented, and $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ are oriented using Proposition 5.5. Then Definition 5.6(1) and (4) determine orientations on $\mathcal{H}_{i,j}$ such that $\mathfrak{H}$ is an oriented flow morphism from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$.*

Remark 5.8 A compatible orientation structure on a flow premorphism is Definition 5.6(1) and (4), and hence we have enough structures to orient the spaces in a flow premorphism when o_i^C, o_j^D, C_i and D_i are oriented. The composition $\mathfrak{F} \circ \mathfrak{H}$ of two composable flow morphisms $\mathfrak{F}$ and $\mathfrak{H}$ with compatible orientation structures has a natural compatible orientation structure, where

$$o_{i,j}^{F \circ H}|_{\mathcal{H}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{F}_{j,k}} = \pi_1^* o_{i,j}^H \otimes (t_{i,j}^H \times s_{j,k}^F)^* \det \Delta_j^D \otimes \pi_2^* o_{j,k}^F.$$

5.1.4 Orientations for flow homotopies In applications, a flow homotopy from $\mathfrak{H}$ to $\mathfrak{F}$ usually comes from considering a time-dependent Floer equation with an extra $[0, 1]_z$ parameter [2, page 414] such that when $z = 0$ the equation defines the flow morphism $\mathfrak{H}$, and when $z = 1$ the equation defines the flow morphism $\mathfrak{F}$. Hence we have the following definition:

Definition 5.9 Let $\mathfrak{H}$ and $\mathfrak{F}$ be two flow premorphisms with orientation structures from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$ whose orientation structures are compatible with those of $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$. A flow homotopy $\mathscr{Y}$ between $\mathfrak{H}$ and $\mathfrak{F}$ is said to have a compatible orientation structure if:

(1) There are $\mathbb{Z}/2$ graded line bundles $o_{i,j}^Y$ over $\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}$. Over $\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}$ there is a grading-preserving isomorphism

$$(5\text{-}17) \qquad \rho_{i,j}^Y : s^* o_i^C \otimes s^* \det C_i \otimes o_{i,j}^Y \to t^* o_j^D.$$

(2) Over the fiber product $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}^C \times_j \mathcal{Y}_{j,k} \subset \mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$, we have a grading-preserving isomorphism

$$(5\text{-}18) \qquad \rho_{i,j,k}^{C,Y} : \pi_1^* o_{i,j}^C \otimes (t \times s)^* \det \Delta_j^C \otimes \pi_2^* o_{j,k}^Y \to o_{i,k}^Y.$$

Over the fiber product $\mathcal{Y}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}^D \subset \partial \mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$, we have a grading-preserving isomorphism

$$(5\text{-}19) \qquad \rho_{i,j,k}^{Y,D} : \pi_1^* o_{i,j}^Y \otimes (t \times s)^* \det \Delta_j^D \otimes \pi_2^* o_{j,k}^D \to o_{i,k}^Y.$$

(3) $\rho_{i,j}^Y$, $\rho_{i,j,k}^{C,Y}$ and $\rho_{i,j,k}^{Y,D}$ are compatible so that commutative diagrams similar to Definition 5.6(3) hold.

(4) On $\mathcal{H}_{i,j} \subset \partial \mathcal{Y}_{i,j}$ we have $o_{i,j}^Y|_{\mathcal{H}_{i,j}} = o_{i,j}^H$ and $\rho_{i,j}^Y|_{\mathcal{H}_{i,j}} = \rho_{i,j}^H$; similarly for $\mathcal{F}_{i,j} \subset \partial \mathcal{Y}_{i,j}$.

(5) $T\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}|_{\mathcal{H}_{i,j}} = \underline{\mathbb{R}}_z \oplus T\mathcal{H}_{i,j}$ with z pointing in along the boundary and $T\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}|_{\mathcal{F}_{i,j}} = \underline{\mathbb{R}}_z \oplus T\mathcal{F}_{i,j}$ with z pointing out along the boundary. And there is a $\mathbb{Z}/2$–bundle isomorphism

$$\phi_{i,j}^Y : \underline{\mathbb{R}}_z \otimes s^* \det C_i \otimes o_{i,j}^Y \otimes t^* \det D_j \to \det T\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}$$

such that $\phi_{i,j}^Y|_{\mathcal{H}_{i,j}} = \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{R}_z} \otimes \phi_{i,j}^H$ and $\phi_{i,j}^Y|_{\mathcal{F}_{i,j}} = \mathrm{id}_{\mathbb{R}_z} \otimes \phi_{i,j}^F$.

(6) On $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}^C \times_j \mathcal{Y}_{j,k} \subset \partial \mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$ we have $V_{i,j}^C \times_{TC_j} T\mathcal{Y}_{j,k} = T\mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$, and the following diagram (we suppress the pullback notation) commutes, where the last row is induced by the isomorphism $V_{i,j}^C \oplus T\mathcal{Y}_{j,k} \to$

$(t \times s)^* N_j^C \oplus T\mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$:

$$\underline{\mathbb{R}}_z \otimes \det N_j^C \otimes \det C_i \otimes o_{i,j}^C \otimes \det \Delta_j^C \otimes o_{j,k}^Y \otimes \det D_k \xrightarrow{\rho_{i,j,k}^{C,Y}} \underline{\mathbb{R}}_z \otimes \det N_j^C \otimes \det C_i \otimes o_{i,k}^Y \otimes \det D_k$$

$$\downarrow$$

$$\underline{\mathbb{R}}_z \otimes \det C_i \otimes o_{i,j}^C \otimes \det \Delta_j^C \otimes N_j^C \otimes o_{j,k}^Y \otimes \det D_k$$

$$\downarrow \qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad \phi_{i,k}^Y$$

$$\det C_i \otimes o_{i,j}^C \otimes \det C_j \otimes \underline{\mathbb{R}}_z \otimes \det C_j \otimes o_{j,k}^Y \otimes \det D_k$$

$$\downarrow \phi_{i,j}^C \otimes \phi_{j,k}^Y$$

$$\det V_{i,j}^C \otimes \det T\mathcal{Y}_{j,k} \xrightarrow{\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad} (t \times s)^* \det N_j^C \otimes \det T\mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$$

On $\mathcal{Y}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}^D \subset \partial \mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$ we have $T\mathcal{Y}_{i,j} \times_{TD_j} V_{j,k}^D = T\mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$, and the following diagram commutes, where the last row is induced by the isomorphism $T\mathcal{Y}_{i,j} \oplus V_{j,k}^D \to (t \times s)^* N_j^D \oplus T\mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$ twisted by $(-1)^{d_j}$ (because of the extra $\mathbb{R}_z$):

$$\underline{\mathbb{R}}_z \otimes \det N_j^D \otimes \det C_i \otimes o_{i,j}^Y \otimes \det \Delta_j^D \otimes o_{j,k}^D \otimes \det D_k \xrightarrow{\rho_{i,j,k}^{Y,D}} \det N_j^D \otimes \det C_i \otimes o_{i,k}^Y \otimes \det D_k$$

$$\downarrow$$

$$\underline{\mathbb{R}}_z \otimes \det C_i \otimes o_{i,j}^Y \otimes \det \Delta_j^D \otimes N_j^D \otimes o_{j,k}^D \otimes \det D_k$$

$$\downarrow \qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad \phi_{i,k}^Y$$

$$\det C_i \otimes o_{i,j}^Y \otimes \det D_j \otimes \underline{\mathbb{R}}_z \otimes \det D_j \otimes o_{j,k}^D \otimes \det D_k$$

$$\downarrow \phi_{i,j}^Y \otimes \phi_{j,k}^D$$

$$\det T\mathcal{Y}_{i,j} \otimes \det V_{j,k}^D \xrightarrow{\quad (-1)^{d_j} \quad} \det N_j^D \otimes \det T\mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$$

(7) Let $\underline{\mathbb{R}}_s$ and $\underline{\mathbb{R}}_t$ be the trivial lines in $V_{i,j}^C$ and $V_{j,k}^D$, respectively. Then s points in along $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}^C \times \mathcal{Y}_{j,k} \subset \partial \mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$ and t points out along $\mathcal{Y}_{i,j} \times \mathcal{M}_{j,k}^D \subset \partial \mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$.

If we can fix orientations of o_i^C, o_i^D, C_i and D_i, then (1), (4) and (5) imply that the induced orientations of $\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}$, $\mathcal{H}_{i,j}$ and $\mathcal{F}_{i,j}$ satisfy

$$\partial[\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}|_{\mathcal{H}_{i,j}}] = -[\mathcal{H}_{i,j}] \quad \text{and} \quad \partial[\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}|_{\mathcal{F}_{i,j}}] = [\mathcal{F}_{i,j}].$$

In general, we have the analog of Proposition 5.5 and 5.7:

Proposition 5.10 *Let $\mathcal{Y}$ be a flow homotopy between two flow premorphisms $\mathfrak{H}$ and $\mathfrak{F}$ from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$. Assume everything is equipped with compatible orientation structures, and o_i^C, o_i^D, C_i and D_i are oriented. If $\mathcal{C}$, $\mathcal{D}$, $\mathfrak{H}$ and $\mathfrak{F}$ are oriented by Propositions 5.5 and 5.7, then $\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}$ can be oriented by Definition 5.9(1) and (5) so that $\mathcal{Y}$ is an oriented flow homotopy between $\mathfrak{H}$ and $\mathfrak{F}$.*

5.2 Local systems

From the discussion in Section 5.1, to orient a flow category, a flow morphism or a flow homotopy with orientation structures, we need to orient o_i and C_i. However, in the Morse–Bott case, it is possible that C_i is not orientable or o_i is not orientable. Hence we need to upgrade the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex to a version with local systems. In fact, Definitions 5.2, 5.6 and 5.9 already provide all the structures needed to define a cochain complex without any orientable assumptions; the generator will be the cohomology of C_i twisted by o_i. In the case of finite-dimensional Morse–Bott theory, let C be a critical manifold with stable bundle S. Then in view of the Thom isomorphism, the contribution from a critical manifold C to the total cohomology should be the cohomology with local system $H^*(C, \det S)$. In the abstract setting, if a flow category has an orientation structure, then the line bundle o_i plays the role of $\det S$.

We will introduce a more compact definition, just like Definition 2.15. First we introduce some notation. Let $\mathcal{C} = \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$ be a flow category. Over $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \subset \partial \mathcal{M}_{i,k}$, we have an induced isomorphism $T\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \oplus T\mathcal{M}_{j,k} \to (t \times s)^* N_j \oplus T\partial \mathcal{M}_{i,k}$. If we use the identification $t^* TC_j \to (t \times s)^* N_j$ given by $v \mapsto (-v, v)$, we have an isomorphism $T\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \oplus T\mathcal{M}_{j,k} \to t^* C_j \oplus T\partial \mathcal{M}_{i,k}$. Therefore we have an isomorphism over $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}$:

$$\det \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \otimes \det \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \to t^* \det C_j \otimes \det \partial \mathcal{M}_{ik}.$$

Using the isomorphism $\underline{\mathbb{R}}_{\text{out}} \oplus T\partial \mathcal{M}_{i,k} = T\mathcal{M}_{i,k}$, there is a natural isomorphism $\det \partial \mathcal{M}_{i,k} \to \det \mathcal{M}_{i,k}$ preserving compatible orientations. Hence we have an isomorphism of degree 1

$$\det \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \otimes \det \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \to t^* \det C_j \otimes \det \mathcal{M}_{ik},$$

which induces an isomorphism

(5-20) $$f : \det \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \otimes t^* \det^* C_j \otimes \det \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \to \det \mathcal{M}_{j,k},$$

where $\det^* C_j = (\det C_j)^*$. Here f is induced by the natural isomorphism $t^* \det C_j \otimes t^* \det^* C_j = \mathbb{R}$ and the order-switch convention (5-4).

Definition 5.11 Let $\mathcal{C} = \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$ be a flow category. Then a *local system* on $\mathcal{C}$ consists of the following:

(1) There is a line bundle o_i on each C_i.

(2) Over the $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$, there is a bundle isomorphism

$$\rho_{i,j} : s^* o_i \otimes \det \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \otimes t^* \det^* C_j \to t^* o_j$$

such that the following diagram over $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \subset \partial \mathcal{M}_{i,k}$ commutes, where f is defined in (5-20):

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
s^* o_i \otimes \det \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \otimes t^* \det^* C_j \otimes \det \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \otimes t^* \det^* C_k & \xrightarrow{\rho_{i,j}} s^* o_j \otimes \det \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \otimes t^* \det^* C_k & \xrightarrow{\rho_{j,k}} t^* o_k \\
\Big\downarrow{f} & & \Big\downarrow \\
s^* o_i \otimes \det \mathcal{M}_{i,k} \otimes t^* \det^* C_k & \xrightarrow{\quad (-1)^{m_{i,j}+1} \rho_{i,k} \quad} & t^* o_k
\end{array}
$$

Proposition 5.12 *If $\mathcal{C}$ has an orientation structure, then o_i is a local system on $\mathcal{C}$.*

Proof Since $\mathcal{C}$ has an orientation structure, ie we have isomorphisms $\rho_{i,j}^C : s^* o_i \otimes s^* \det C_i \otimes o_{i,j} \to t^* o_j$, $V_{i,j} = T\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \oplus \mathbb{R}$ and $\phi_{i,j} : s^* o_i \otimes o_{i,j} \otimes t^* o_j \to \det V_{i,j}$, using the natural orientation on $\mathbb{R}$ and isomorphisms $\phi_{i,j}$ and $\rho_{i,j}^C$ we get an isomorphism $\rho_{i,j} : s^* o_i \otimes \det \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \otimes t^* \det^* C_j \to t^* o_j$. Similarly to Proposition 5.5, Definition 5.2(4) and (5) imply the commutative diagram in Definition 5.11. $\square$

Similarly, we have the following definitions of local systems on flow morphism and flow homotopies:

Definition 5.13 Let $\mathfrak{H} = \{\mathcal{H}_{i,j}\}$ be a flow morphism from the flow category $\mathcal{C}$ to the flow category $\mathcal{D}$. Both $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ are equipped with local systems. We say $\mathfrak{H}$ has a *compatible local system* if, on each $\mathcal{H}_{i,j}$, we have an isomorphism

$$\rho_{i,j}^H : s^* o_i^C \otimes \det \mathcal{H}_{i,j} \otimes t^* \det^* C_j \to t^* o_j^D$$

such that the two following diagrams over $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}^C \times_j \mathcal{H}_{j,k} \subset \partial \mathcal{H}_{i,k}$ and $\mathcal{H}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}^D \subset \partial \mathcal{H}_{i,k}$, respectively, commute, where the map f in the first columns of both diagrams is defined in a similar way to (5-20):

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
s^* o_i^C \otimes \det \mathcal{M}_{i,j}^C \otimes t^* \det^* C_j \otimes \det \mathcal{H}_{j,k} \otimes t^* \det^* D_k & \xrightarrow{\rho_{i,j}^C} & s^* o_j^C \otimes \det \mathcal{H}_{j,k} \otimes t^* \det^* D_k & \xrightarrow{\rho_{j,k}^H} & t^* o_k^D \\
\downarrow{f} & & & & \downarrow \\
s^* o_i^C \otimes \mathcal{H}_{i,k} \otimes t^* \det^* D_k & \xrightarrow{(-1)^{m_{i,j}^C + 1} \rho_{i,k}^H} & & & t^* o_k^D
\end{array}
$$

$$
\begin{array}{ccccc}
s^* o_i^C \otimes \det \mathcal{H}_{i,j} \otimes t^* \det^* D_j \otimes \det \mathcal{M}_{j,k}^D \otimes t^* \det^* D_k & \xrightarrow{\rho_{i,j}^H} & s^* o_j^D \otimes \det \mathcal{M}_{j,k}^D \otimes t^* \det^* D_k & \xrightarrow{\rho_{j,k}^D} & t^* o_k^D \\
\downarrow{f} & & & & \downarrow \\
s^* o_i^C \otimes \mathcal{H}_{i,k} \otimes t^* \det^* D_k & \xrightarrow{(-1)^{h_{i,k} + 1} \rho_{i,k}^H} & & & t^* o_k^D
\end{array}
$$

Definition 5.14 A compatible local system on a flow premorphism $\mathfrak{H}$ from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$ consists of bundle isomorphisms $\rho_{i,j}^H : s^* o_i^C \otimes \det \mathcal{H}_{i,j} \otimes t^* \det^* D_j \to t^* o_j^D$ on every $\mathcal{H}_{i,j}$.

Definition 5.15 Let $\mathscr{Y}$ be a flow morphism between flow premorphisms $\mathfrak{H}$ and $\mathfrak{F}$ from the flow category $\mathcal{C}$ to the flow category $\mathcal{D}$. Assume $\mathcal{C}, \mathcal{D}, \mathfrak{H}$ and $\mathfrak{F}$ are equipped with compatible local systems. We say $\mathscr{Y}$ has a *compatible local system* if on each $\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}$ we have an isomorphism $\rho_{i,j}^Y : s^* o_i^C \otimes \det \mathcal{Y}_{i,j} \otimes t^* \det^* D_j \to t^* o_j^D$ such that:

(1) Under the identification $\det \mathcal{Y}_{i,j}|_{\mathcal{F}_{i,j}} = \det \mathcal{F}_{i,j}$ induced by $\mathbb{R}_{\text{out}} \oplus T\mathcal{F}_{i,j} = T\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}|_{\mathcal{F}_{i,j}}$, we have $\rho_{i,j}^Y|_{\mathcal{F}_{i,j}} = \rho_{i,j}^F$. Under the identification $\det \mathcal{Y}_{i,j}|_{\mathcal{H}_{i,j}} = \det \mathcal{H}_{i,j}$ induced by $\mathbb{R}_{\text{in}} \oplus T\mathcal{H}_{i,j} = T\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}|_{\mathcal{H}_{i,j}}$, we have $\rho_{i,j}^Y|_{\mathcal{H}_{i,j}} = \rho_{i,j}^H$.

(2) The following two diagrams over $\mathcal{M}^C_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{Y}_{j,k} \subset \partial \mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$ and $\mathcal{Y}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}^D_{j,k} \subset \partial \mathcal{Y}_{i,k}$, respectively, commute, where the map f in the first columns of both diagrams is defined in a similar way to (5-20):

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
s^*o^C_i \otimes \det \mathcal{M}^C_{i,j} \otimes t^* \det{}^* C_j \otimes \det \mathcal{Y}_{j,k} \otimes t^* \det{}^* D_k \xrightarrow{\rho^C_{i,j}} s^*o^C_j \otimes \det \mathcal{Y}_{j,k} \otimes t^* \det{}^* D_k \xrightarrow{\rho^Y_{j,k}} t^*o^D_k \\
\downarrow{f} \qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad \downarrow \\
s^*o^C_i \otimes \mathcal{Y}_{i,k} \otimes t^* \det{}^* D_k \xrightarrow{\quad (-1)^{c_j} \rho^Y_{i,k} \quad} t^*o^D_k
\end{array}
$$

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
s^*o^C_i \otimes \det \mathcal{Y}_{i,j} \otimes t^* \det{}^* D_j \otimes \det \mathcal{M}^D_{j,k} \otimes t^* \det{}^* D_k \xrightarrow{\rho^Y_{i,j}} s^*o^D_j \otimes \det \mathcal{M}^D_{j,k} \otimes t^* \det{}^* D_k \xrightarrow{\rho^D_{j,k}} t^*o^D_k \\
\downarrow{f} \qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad\qquad \downarrow \\
s^*o^C_i \otimes \mathcal{Y}_{i,k} \otimes t^* \det{}^* D_k \xrightarrow{\quad (-1)^{y_{i,k}+1} \rho^Y_{i,k} \quad} t^*o^D_k
\end{array}
$$

The propositions below follow from arguments similar to the proof of Proposition 5.12.

Proposition 5.16 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ be two flow categories with orientation structures. Assume $\mathfrak{H}$ is a flow morphism with compatible orientation structures. If $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ are given local systems using Proposition 5.12, then $\mathfrak{H}$ has a compatible local system. If $\mathfrak{H}$ is only a flow premorphism from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$ with compatible orientation structure, then $\mathfrak{H}$ can be given a compatible local system.*

Proposition 5.17 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ be two flow categories with orientation structures, and $\mathfrak{H}$ and $\mathfrak{F}$ two flow premorphism with compatible orientation structures. Assume $\mathscr{Y}$ is a flow morphism with compatible orientation structures. If $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ are given local systems using Proposition 5.12 and $\mathfrak{H}$ and $\mathfrak{F}$ are given local systems using Proposition 5.16, then $\mathscr{Y}$ has a compatible local system.*

5.2.1 De Rham theory with local systems To generalize the construction of the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex to flow categories with local systems, we first recall the de Rham theory with local systems [11, Section 7]. Let M be manifold and o a local system over M. The de Rham complex $\Omega^*(M, o)$ with local system o is defined as sections of $\bigwedge T^*M \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}/2} o$. The usual exterior differential lifts to a differential on $\Omega^*(M, o)$, which is still denoted by d. The associated cohomology is denoted by $H^*(M, o)$. The wedge product defines a bilinear map

$$\Omega^*(M, o) \times \Omega^*(M, o') \to \Omega^*(M, o \otimes o'),$$

which induces a map on cohomology. Using local systems, the integration is well defined for forms in $\Omega^*(M, \det M)$ without assuming M is oriented. Moreover, we have the form of Stokes's theorem

$$\int_M d\alpha = \int_{\partial M} i^* \alpha,$$

where $i\colon \Omega^*(M, \det M) \to \Omega^*(\partial M, \det \partial M)$ is defined by the restriction map and the isomorphism $\det M|_{\partial M} \to \det \partial M$ induced by the isomorphism $\mathbb{R}_{\text{out}} \oplus T\partial M = TM$.

Let C be a closed manifold with a local system o. Since there is a canonical isomorphism from $o^* \otimes o$ to the trivial line bundle, we have a paring

$$(5\text{-}21) \qquad\qquad H^*(C, o^*) \times H^*(C, o \otimes \det C) \to \mathbb{R}$$

by integrating over C. It is a nondegenerate pairing just like the usual case.

5.2.2 The minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex for flow categories with local systems Let $\mathcal{C} = \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$ be a flow category with a local system. Define $o_i^* \boxtimes (o_i \otimes \det C_i)$ to be $\pi_1^* o_i^* \otimes \pi_2^*(o_i \otimes \det C_i)$. Since $\pi_2^* \det C_i$ is canonically isomorphic to $\det \Delta_i$ and $(o_i^* \boxtimes o_i)|_{\Delta_i} = o_i^* \otimes o_i = \mathbb{R}$, when $\omega \in \Omega^*(C_i \times C_i, o_i^* \boxtimes (o_i \otimes \det C_i))$ is restricted to the diagonal Δ_i, we have $\omega|_{\Delta_i} \in \Omega^*(\Delta_i, \det \Delta_i)$. Therefore $\int_{\Delta_i} \omega$ is well defined. In particular, $\int_{\Delta_i}$ descends to a well-defined map on $H^*(C_i \times C_i, o_i^* \boxtimes (o_i \otimes \det C_i))$. Since the pairing in (5-21) is nondegenerate, $\int_{\Delta_i}$ is represented by a class in

$$H^*(C_i \times C_i, (o_i \otimes \det C_i) \boxtimes o_i^*) = H^*(C_i, o_i \otimes \det C_i) \otimes H^*(C_i, o_i^*).$$

If we choose representatives $\{\theta_{i,a}\} \subset \Omega^*(C_i, o_i \otimes \det C_i)$ of a basis of $H^*(C_i, o_i \otimes \det C_i)$ and representatives $\{\theta_{i,a}^*\} \subset \Omega^*(C_i, o_i^*)$ of the dual basis in $H^*(C_i, o_i^*)$ in the sense that $\langle \theta_{i,a}^*, \theta_{i,b} \rangle = (-1)^{\dim C_i \cdot |\theta_{i,b}|} \int_C \theta_{i,a}^* \wedge \theta_{i,b} = \delta_{ab}$, then $\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^*$ represents $\int_{\Delta_i}$ by the same proof as in Proposition 3.2. On the other hand, there is a natural isomorphism $\pi_1^* \det C_i \otimes \pi_2^* \det C_i \simeq \det \Delta_i \otimes \det N_i$ over the diagonal Δ_i, induced by the isomorphism $TC_i \oplus TC_i = T\Delta_i \oplus N_i$. Using the natural identification $\pi_2^* \det C_i \to \det \Delta_i$, there is an induced isomorphism $\pi_1^* \det C_i \to N_i$. A similar isomorphism was already used in the definition of (5-20). Using this isomorphism, if a form in $\Omega^*(C_i \times C_i, (o_i \otimes \det C_i) \boxtimes o_i^*)$ is supported in the tubular neighborhood of Δ_i, then it can be viewed as a form in $\Omega^*(N_i, \det N_i)$. Using the twisted Thom isomorphism in [72], we get another representative of $\int_{\Delta_i}$ by the Thom classes δ_i^n. As a consequence, we find primitives $f_i^n \in \Omega^*(C_i \times C_i, (o_i \otimes \det C_i) \boxtimes o_i^*)$ such that

$$\mathrm{d} f_i^n = \delta_i^n - \sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^*,$$

with a relation similar to (3-7). Similarly to Definition 3.3, such choices are referred to as *defining data*.

Given defining data on a flow category with a local system, we define the minimal Morse–Bott chain complex to be

$$(5\text{-}22) \qquad\qquad \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}) := \varinjlim_{q \to -\infty} \prod_{j=q}^{\infty} H^*(C_j, o_j^*) = \varinjlim_{q \to -\infty} \prod_{j=q}^{\infty} H^*(C_j, o_j)$$

(since $o_i \simeq o_i^*$, but not canonically). Next, we explain how (3-15) for d_k in the construction of the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex still makes sense in the setting of local systems. Let $\alpha \in \Omega^*(C_v, o_v^*)$ and $\gamma \in \Omega^*(C_{v+k}, o_{v+k} \otimes \det C_{v+k})$. Then $s^* \alpha \wedge t^* \gamma \in \Omega^*(\mathcal{M}_{v,v+k}, s^* o_v^* \otimes t^* o_{v+k} \otimes t^* \det C_{v+k})$. By Definition 5.11, we have an isomorphism

$$\rho_{v,v+k} \colon s^* o_v \otimes \det \mathcal{M}_{v,v+k} \otimes t^* \det^* C_{v+k} \to t^* o_{v+k},$$

which induces an isomorphism

$$\det \mathcal{M}_{v,v+k} \to s^* o_v^* \otimes t^* o_{v+k} \otimes t^* \det C_{v+k}. \tag{5-23}$$

Let $\psi_{v,v+k}$ denote the inverse of (5-23) with an extra negative sign. The extra negative sign is to match the negative sign in the proof of Proposition 5.5. Using $\psi_{v,v+k}$, we can view $s^*\alpha \wedge t^*\gamma$ as in $\Omega^*(\mathcal{M}_{v,v+k}, \det \mathcal{M}_{v,v+k})$, and hence the integration $\int_{\mathcal{M}_{v,v+k}} s^*\alpha \wedge t^*\gamma$ is well defined.

Next, we consider $\mathcal{M}_i^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i}^n, \gamma]$. Then $s^*\alpha \wedge (t \times s)^* f_{v+i}^n \wedge t^*\gamma$ is a form in

$$\Omega^*(\mathcal{M}_{v,v+i} \times \mathcal{M}_{v+i,v+k}, s^* o_v^* \otimes (t \times s)^*((o_{v+i} \otimes \det C_{v+i}) \boxtimes o_{v+i}^*) \otimes t^*(o_{v+k} \otimes \det C_{v+k})).$$

Since

$$s^* o_v^* \otimes (t \times s)^*((o_{v+i} \otimes \det C_{v+i}) \boxtimes o_{v+i}^*) \otimes t^*(o_{v+k} \otimes \det C_{v+k})$$
$$= (s^* o_v^* \otimes t^*(o_{v+i} \otimes \det C_{v+i})) \boxtimes (s^* o_{v+i}^* \otimes t^*(o_{v+k} \otimes \det C_{v+k})),$$

using $\psi_{v,v+i}$ and $\psi_{v+i,v+k}$, we get a bundle isomorphism

$$s^* o_v^* \otimes (t \times s)^*((o_{v+i} \otimes \det C_{v+i}) \boxtimes o_{v+i}^*) \otimes t^*(o_{v+k} \otimes \det C_{v+k}) \to \det \mathcal{M}_{v,v+i} \boxtimes \det \mathcal{M}_{v+i,v+k}$$
$$\to \det(\mathcal{M}_{v,v+i} \times \mathcal{M}_{v+i,v+k}).$$

Thus $\mathcal{M}_i^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i}^n, \gamma]$ is defined. Similarly, $\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\dots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \dots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma]$ makes sense in the local system setting. Thus the differential $d_{\mathrm{BC}} = \prod d_k$ is well defined and $d_{\mathrm{BC}}^2 = 0$ by the same proof as in Theorem 3.10.

Theorem 5.18 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a flow category with a local system. Then $(\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}), d_{\mathrm{BC}})$ is cochain complex for any defining data and the cohomology is independent of defining data.*

Similarly, we have analogs of Theorems 3.21, 3.28, 3.30, 3.33 and 3.36 in the setting of local systems by the same argument.

6 Generalizations

In this section, we give two generalizations of the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex. The first is dropping the compactness assumption on the C_i in flow categories. The second extracts abstract properties used in the construction of the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex and provides more flexibility in choosing the "homological perturbation" data. Such generalization leads to Gysin exact sequences for flow categories.

6.1 Proper flow categories

We first generalize to the case that C_i is not compact. However, we cannot work with every noncompact manifold. Hence we introduce the following:

Definition 6.1 A manifold C is called of *finite type* if and only if C is the interior of a compact manifold M with boundary.

In particular, any closed manifold is of finite type. An infinite-genus surface is not of finite type. For any manifold C of finite type, $H^*(C)$ is a finite-dimensional vector space.

Definition 6.2 A *proper flow category* is defined similarly to Definition 2.9, except for the following two differences:

(1) C_i is a manifold such that each connected component of C_i is of finite type.

(2) $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ is not assumed to be compact. However, the target map $t_{i,j} \colon \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \to C_j$ is proper.

To explain the generalization of the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex to proper flow categories, we first explain the counterpart of the perturbation data. Although the following discussion does not require a coherent orientation as explained in Section 5, we assume $\{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$ is equipped with a coherent orientation for simplicity. In particular, C_i is oriented. Let C be an oriented manifold of finite type and $\Omega_c^*(C)$ denote the space of compactly supported differential forms on C. Then we have a bilinear form

$$\Omega^*(C) \times \Omega_c^*(C) \to \mathbb{R} \quad \text{given by } (\alpha, \beta) \mapsto \langle \alpha, \beta \rangle := (-1)^{\dim C \cdot |\beta|} \int_C \alpha \wedge \beta,$$

and Lefschetz duality asserts that the bilinear form is nondegenerate on cohomology.

Definition 6.3 Let C be an oriented manifold of finite type. We define $\Omega_{c,\cdot}^*(C \times C)$ to be

$$\{\alpha \in \Omega_{c,\cdot}^*(C \times C) \mid \operatorname{supp}(\alpha) \subset K \times C \text{ for some compact set } K\}.$$

Similarly, we define $\Omega_{\cdot,c}^*(C \times C)$ to be

$$\{\alpha \in \Omega_{\cdot,c}^*(C \times C) \mid \operatorname{supp}(\alpha) \subset C \times K \text{ for some compact set } K\}.$$

$\Omega_{c,\cdot}^*(C \times C)$ and $\Omega_{\cdot,c}^*(C \times C)$ are both cochain complexes using the usual exterior differential. Moreover, $H_{c,\cdot}^*(C \times C) := H^*(\Omega_{c,\cdot}^*(C \times C), \mathrm{d}) = H_c^*(C) \otimes H^*(C)$ and $H_{\cdot,c}^*(C \times C) := H^*(\Omega_{\cdot,c}^*(C \times C), \mathrm{d}) = H^*(C) \otimes H_c^*(C)$, where $H_c^*(C)$ is the cohomology of compactly supported differential forms. The following proposition is an analog of the Lefschetz duality with a similar proof to [11, Theorem 12.15]:

Proposition 6.4 *The bilinear form* $\Omega_{c,\cdot}^*(C \times C) \times \Omega_{\cdot,c}^*(C \times C) \to \mathbb{R}$ *defined by* $(\alpha, \beta) \mapsto \int_{C \times C} \alpha \wedge \beta$ *descends to cohomology. The induced bilinear form on cohomology is nondegenerate.*

To explain the perturbation data for proper flow categories, we need to interpret the diagonal $\Delta \subset C \times C$ as a cohomology class and represent the cohomology class two different ways: Thom classes which approximate the Dirac current of the diagonal, and a trace term. Let $\alpha \in \Omega_{\cdot,c}^*(C \times C)$. Then $\operatorname{supp}(\alpha) \cap \Delta$ is compact, and hence $\int_\Delta \alpha$ is well defined. Moreover, for $\alpha \in \Omega_{\cdot,c}^*(C \times C)$ we have $\int_\Delta \mathrm{d}\alpha = 0$ by Stokes' theorem. Therefore Δ determines a linear function $[\Delta]$ on $H_{\cdot,c}^*(C \times C)$. In particular, $[\Delta]$ can be represented by a cohomology class in $H_{c,\cdot}^*(C \times C)$ by Proposition 6.4. Since C is of finite type, both $H^*(C)$ and $H_c^*(C)$ are finite-dimensional. Let $\{\theta_a \in \Omega_c^*(C)\}_{1 \le a \le \dim H_c^*(C)}$ be representatives of a basis
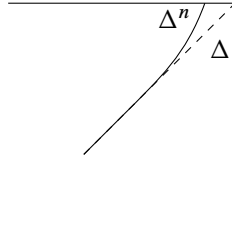
Figure 3: The graph of Δ^n near the boundary.

of $H_c^*(C)$ in $\Omega_c^*(C)$, and $\{\theta_a^* \in \Omega^*(C)\}_{1 \leq a \leq \dim H^*(C)}$ be representatives of a basis of $H^*(C)$ in $\Omega^*(C)$, such that $\langle \theta_a^*, \theta_b \rangle = \delta_{ab}$. The following proposition is proven by the same argument as in Proposition 3.2:

Proposition 6.5 $\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_a \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_a^* \in \Omega_{c,\cdot}^*(C \times C)$ *represents* $[\Delta]$, *ie for any closed form* $\alpha \in \Omega_{\cdot,c}^*(C \times C)$,

$$\int_{C \times C} \alpha \wedge \left(\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_a \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_a^* \right) = \int_\Delta \alpha.$$

The Dirac current δ of the diagonal Δ and any of its approximations given in (3-4) are not in $\Omega_{c,\cdot}^*(C \times C)$. To overcome this problem, we need to perturb Δ to Δ^n so that $\Delta^n \subset K \times C$ for a compact set K and Δ^n approximates Δ in a suitable sense. In order to do this, we write C as $M \cup (0,1) \times \partial M$ for a manifold M with boundary ∂M. We fix a smooth nondecreasing function $f : \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}_+$ such that $f(x) = 0$ for $x \leq 0$ and $f(x) < x$ for $x > 0$. Then we define $\Delta^n \subset C \times C$ to be

$$\Delta^n := \Delta_M \cup \Delta_{(0,1-1/n) \times \partial M} \cup \tilde{\Delta}^n,$$

where

$$\left[1 - \frac{1}{n}, 1 \right) \times \partial M \times \left[1 - \frac{1}{n}, 1 \right) \times \partial M \supset \tilde{\Delta}^n := \left\{ \left(1 - \frac{1}{n} + f(r), x, 1 - \frac{1}{n} + r, x \right) \mid r \in \left[0, \frac{1}{n} \right), x \in \partial M \right\}.$$

Proposition 6.6 $\int_{\Delta^n}$ *defines the same map on* $H_{\cdot,c}^*(C \times C)$ *for all* $n \in \mathbb{N}$ *and equals* $\int_\Delta$.

Proof The claim follows from the fact that any class in $H_c^*(C)$ has a representative supported in $M \subset C = M \cup (0,1) \times \partial M$ and $\Delta_n \cap (C \times M) = \Delta \cap (C \times M)$ for all n. $\qquad\square$

The Thom class of Δ^n constructed from (3-4) gives a form $\delta^n \in \Omega_{c,\cdot}^*(C \times C)$ — in a sufficiently small tubular neighborhood of Δ^n — representing the map $\int_{\Delta^n} = \int_\Delta$ through the nondegenerate bilinear form in Proposition 6.4. As a consequence of Propositions 6.4 and 6.5, δ^n and $\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_a \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_a^*$ are cohomologous in $\Omega_{c,\cdot}^*(C \times C)$, ie we can find primitives f^n such that

$$\mathrm{d} f^n = \delta^n - \sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_a \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_a^*.$$

The following proposition shows that we can choose δ^n and f^n carefully so that the relation (3-7) holds asymptotically. Such a result is crucial for setting up the convergence results and follows directly from the construction.

Proposition 6.7 *Fix a tubular neighborhood of $\Delta \subset C \times C$. Then there exist Thom classes δ^n of Δ^n and primitives f^n such that $f^n - f^m = (\rho_n - \rho_m)\psi$ on $C \times (M \cup (0, 1 - 2/\min(n, m)) \times \partial M)$.*

Following the same idea as in Definition 3.3, the bases $\{\theta_{i,a}\}$ and $\{\theta_{i,a}^*\}$, along with Thom classes δ_i^n and primitives f_i^n in Proposition 6.7 for each C_i, give defining data for a proper flow category. Next, we show the analog of Lemmas 3.7 and 3.14 hold for proper flow categories:

Lemma 6.8 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be an oriented proper flow category. Given defining data as above, then for every $\alpha \in \Omega^*(C_v), \gamma \in \Omega_c^*(C_{v+k})$:*

(1) $\lim_{n \to \infty} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\dots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \dots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma] \in \mathbb{R}$ *exists.*

(2) *For $* = (|\alpha| + m_{v,v+i_p})c_{v+i_p}$,*

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\dots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \dots, \delta_{v+i_p}^n, \dots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma]$$
$$= (-1)^* \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\dots,i_{p-1},\bar{i}_p,i_{p+1},\dots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \dots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma].$$

Proof Since the target map t is proper,

$$t^*\gamma \in \Omega_c^*(\mathcal{M}_{v+i_r,v+k}) \quad \text{and} \quad (t \times s)^* f_{v+i_j}^n \in \Omega_{c,\cdot}^*(\mathcal{M}_{v+i_{j-1},v+i_j} \times \mathcal{M}_{v+i_j,v+i_{j+1}}),$$

so $s^*\alpha \wedge (t \times s)^* f_{v+i_1}^n \wedge \dots \wedge (t \times s)^* f_{v+i_r}^n \wedge t^*\gamma \in \Omega_c^*(\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\dots,i_r}^{v,k})$. Hence $\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\dots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \dots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma]$ makes sense. For the convergence, take $\mathcal{M}_i^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i}^n, \gamma]$ as an example. Let K denote the subset $s_{v+i,v+k}(t_{v+i,v+k}^{-1}(\text{supp}(\gamma)))$ of C_{v+i}. Then we only need f_{v+i}^n for its value on $C_{v+i} \times K$ to determine $\mathcal{M}_i^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i}^n, \gamma]$. By the properness, K is compact. We write $C_{v+i} = M \cup (0, 1) \times \partial M$. Therefore, for n big enough, $K \subset M \cup (0, 1 - 2/n) \times \partial M$. Hence for n and m big enough, the difference $f_{v+i}^n - f_{v+i}^m$ on $C_{v+i} \times K$ is prescribed in Proposition 6.7. Therefore the argument in the proof of Lemma 3.7 can be applied to prove the convergence. Similarly, $\lim_{n \to \infty} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\dots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \dots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma]$ exists. The second claim follows from a similar argument and the proof of Lemma 3.14. □

Similarly to Definition 6.2, we have proper flow morphisms, proper flow premorphisms and proper flow homotopies if we require the target maps to be proper. With Lemma 6.8, all results in Section 3 can be generalized to proper flow categories with the same proof.

6.2 Flexible defining data

The following discussion works for proper flow categories with orientation structures. However, for simplicity of notation, we only work with oriented flow categories. Let $\mathcal{C}$ be an oriented flow category. From the discussion in Section 3, the essential property we need for the construction is the following relation:

$$(6\text{-}1) \qquad \qquad \delta_i^n = \mathrm{d} f_i^n + \sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^*.$$

In fact, it is not necessary to construct our cochain complex from the cohomology of the critical manifolds. We only need to find differential forms $\{\theta_{i,a}\}$ and $\{\theta_{i,a}^*\}$ such that (6-1) holds and they are dual bases

in the sense that $\langle \theta_{i,a}^*, \theta_{i,b} \rangle_i = \delta_{ab}$. Such generalization provides some flexibility in applications. For example, one can use the generalized construction to prove Gysin exact sequences for sphere bundles over flow categories.

Definition 6.9 For an oriented closed manifold C, a reduction of $\Omega^*(C)$ is a pair (A, A^*) such that:

(1) A and A^* are finite-dimensional subspaces of $\Omega^*(C)$ with $\dim A = \dim A^*$.

(2) There exists a basis $\{\theta_a\}$ of A and a basis $\{\theta_a^*\}$ of A^* such that $\langle \theta_a^*, \theta_b \rangle = \delta_{ab}$.

(3) $\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_a \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_a^*$ is cohomologous to the Thom class δ^n.

Example 6.10 In the construction of the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex on an oriented flow category, we use that the reduction $A = A^*$ equals the image of chosen quasiembedding $H^*(C) \to \Omega^*(C)$.

Using Definition 6.9, we can generalize defining data to the following: a reduction (A_i, A_i^*) for C_i, a family of Thom classes δ_i^n converging to the Dirac current of the diagonal Δ_i, and primitives f_n^i such that (6-1) and (3-7) hold. We will call this generalization *defining data with reductions*.

Let $\mathcal{C}$ be an oriented flow category. Given defining data with reductions A, we define

$$
\text{(6-2)} \qquad \text{BC}(\mathcal{C}, A) := \varinjlim_{j \to -\infty} \prod_{i=j}^{\infty} A_i^*.
$$

The differential is defined as $d_A = \prod_{i=0}^{\infty} d_{A,i}$, where

$$
\text{(6-3)} \qquad d_{A,0}\alpha := (-1)^{|\alpha|(c_v+1)+c_v} \sum_a \left(\int_{C_v} d\alpha \wedge \theta_{v,a} \right) \theta_{v,a}^* = (-1)^{c_v+|\alpha|} \sum_a \langle d\alpha, \theta_{v,a} \rangle \theta_{v,a}^*,
$$

with d the normal exterior differential and $\alpha \in A_v^*$. For $k \geq 1$ and $\gamma \in A_{v+k}$,

$$
\text{(6-4)} \qquad \langle d_{A,k}\alpha, \gamma \rangle_{v+k} = \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_{\substack{r \geq 0 \\ 0 = i_0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_r < k}} (-1)^\star \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma],
$$

where $\star = \sum_{j=0}^r \ddagger(\mathcal{C}, \alpha, i_j)$.

Remark 6.11 We can view (6-3) as the composition of d with the projection (3-3) twisted by a sign. The extra sign could be eliminated by using a suitable change of coordinates on A_v^* (ie conjugate by an automorphism of A_v^*). Then the sign in (6-4) would be modified accordingly. The upshot is that there is no canonical orientation and sign convention, but different conventions typically differ by a "change of coordinates".

One important feature of our construction is that the choices we make on the critical manifolds C_i (reductions, Thom classes and primitives f_i^n) are independent of the structures of the flow categories, flow morphisms or flow homotopies.

Example 6.12 Now we can (heuristically) rephrase the perturbation data for the cascades construction as a reduction. Let $\mathcal{C} = \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$ be an oriented flow category. We neglect the difference between

differential forms and currents, as well as orientations and signs for now. For a Morse–Smale pair (f_i, g_i) on a critical manifold C_i, let $A_i := \{[S_x]\}_{x \in \text{Crit}(f_i)}$ and $A_i^* := \{[U_x]\}_{x \in \text{Crit}(f_i)}$. Then, by [39],

$$[\Delta_i] - \sum_{x \in \text{Crit}(f_i)} [S_x][U_x] = d \lim_{t \to \infty} \left[\bigcup_{t' < t} \text{graph } \phi_{t'}^i \right],$$

and $[U_x]$ is the dual of $[S_x]$. Thus $\{A_i, A_i^*\}$ is a reduction.[25]

One should be able to modify our construction to make the argument above rigorous. In particular, we need an extension of the space of differential forms to include $[S_x]$ and $[U_x]$ as well as the homotopy operator. However, such an extension will depend on $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$, which explains various transversality requirements of the gradient flows of f_i with $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ in the cascades construction.

In general, a reduction for manifolds of finite type with local systems is defined as follows:

Definition 6.13 For a manifold C of finite type with a local system o, a reduction is a pair (A, A^*) such that:

(1) A and A^* are finite-dimensional subspaces of $\Omega_c^*(C, o \otimes \det C)$ and $\Omega^*(C, o^*)$, respectively, such that $\dim A = \dim A^*$.

(2) There exists a basis $\{\theta_a\}$ of A and a basis $\{\theta_a^*\}$ of A^* such that $\langle \theta_a^*, \theta_b \rangle = \delta_{ab}$.

(3) $\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_a \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_a^*$ represents the same map as $\int_\Delta$ on $H^*(C, o^*) \otimes H_c^*(C, o \otimes \det C)$.

Constructions in Section 3 combined with results in Sections 5.2 and 6.1 yield the following results by identical proofs:

Theorem 6.14 (1) *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be a proper flow category with local systems and let A be defining data with reductions. Then (6-2), (6-3) and (6-4) define a cochain complex $(\text{BC}(\mathcal{C}, A), d_A)$, and the homotopy type of $(\text{BC}(\mathcal{C}, A), d_A)$ is independent of the defining data.*

(2) *Let $\mathcal{D}$ be another proper flow category with local systems, B defining data with reductions for $\mathcal{D}$ and $\mathfrak{H}$ a proper flow morphism from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$ with compatible local systems. Then (3-34) defines a cochain morphism $\phi_{A,B}^H : (\text{BC}(\mathcal{C}, A), d_A) \to (\text{BC}(\mathcal{C}, B), d_B)$ and the homotopy type of $\phi_{A,B}^H$ is independent of the defining data.*

(3) *Let $\mathcal{E}$ be another proper flow category with local systems, C defining data with reductions for $\mathcal{E}$ and $\mathfrak{F}$ a proper flow morphism from $\mathcal{D}$ to $\mathcal{E}$ with compatible local systems. Assume $\mathfrak{H}$ and $\mathfrak{F}$ are composable. Then $\phi_{A,C}^{F \circ H}$ and $\phi_{B,C}^F \circ \phi_{A,B}^H$ are homotopic.*

(4) *Let $\mathfrak{H}$ and $\mathfrak{F}$ be two proper flow premorphisms from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{D}$ with compatible local systems. Assume there exists a proper flow homotopy $\mathscr{Y}$ from $\mathfrak{H}$ to $\mathfrak{F}$ with compatible local systems. Then $\phi_{A,B}^H$ is homotopic to $\phi_{A,B}^F$.*

---

[25]The "homotopy operator" f_i^n in our construction might be different from the "homotopy operator" $\left[\bigcup_{0 < t < \infty} \text{graph } \phi_t^i \right]$ in the cascades construction. However, the homotopy operator in our construction is irrelevant as long as the convergence results in Section 3 hold.

Remark 6.15 When $\mathcal{C}$ is a single manifold C, let (A, A^*) be a reduction. Then the independence result in Theorem 6.14 shows that the cohomology of $(A^*, d_{A,0})$ is $H^*(C, o^*)$. In particular, $\dim A = \dim A^* \geq \dim H^*(C, o^*)$.

We end this subsection with a general way of constructing a reduction (but not all reductions arise in this way).

Proposition 6.16 *Let C be a manifold of finite type with a local system o, and assume A and A^* are finite-dimensional subspaces of $\Omega_c^*(C, o \otimes \det C)$ and $\Omega^*(C, o^*)$, respectively. If d is closed on both A and A^*, the pairing $A^* \otimes A \to \mathbb{R}$ given by $(\alpha, \beta) \mapsto (-1)^{\dim C \cdot |\beta|} \int_C \alpha \wedge \beta$ is nondegenerate, and both $A \hookrightarrow \Omega^*(C, o \otimes \det C)$ and $A^* \hookrightarrow \Omega^*(C, o^*)$ induce surjections on cohomology, then (A, A^*) is a reduction.*

Proof Let $\{\theta_a\}$ be a basis of A, and $\{\theta_a^*\}$ the dual basis under the pairing. It remains to verify Definition 6.13(3). We first claim that $T := \sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_a \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_a^*$ is closed. By our assumption that A and A^* are closed under d, we have $dT \in \pi_1^* A \wedge \pi_2^* A^* \subset \Omega_{c,\cdot}^*(C \times C, (o \otimes \det C) \boxtimes o^*)$. Moreover, the pairing on $(\pi_1^* A \wedge \pi_2^* A^*) \otimes (\pi_1^* A^* \wedge \pi_2^* A)$ from integration is nondegenerate by the nondegeneracy of the paring on $A^* \otimes A$. Therefore to show $dT = 0$, it is sufficient to prove that for any $\theta_p^* \in A^*$ and $\theta_q \in A$,

$$\int_{C \times C} dT \wedge \pi_1^* \theta_p^* \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_q = 0.$$

Hence

$$\int_{C \times C} dT \wedge \pi_1^* \theta_p^* \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_q = \int_{C \times C} \left(\sum_a \pi_1^* d\theta_a \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_a^* + (-1)^{|\theta_a|} \pi_1^* \theta_a \wedge \pi_2^* d\theta_a^* \right) \wedge \pi_1^* \theta_p^* \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_q$$

$$= (-1)^{|\theta_q^*| \cdot |\theta_p^*| + \dim C \cdot |\theta_q|} \int_C d\theta_q \wedge \theta_p^* + \int_C d\theta_p^* \wedge \theta_q.$$

Since the only case where the above integration is nonzero is when $|\theta_q| + |\theta_p^*| = \dim C - 1$, the above integration is $\int_C d(\theta_p^* \wedge \theta_q) = 0$. As a consequence, T is closed. Since $A \hookrightarrow \Omega^*(C, o \otimes \det C)$ and $A^* \hookrightarrow \Omega^*(C, o^*)$ induce surjections on cohomology, every class $H^*(C, o^*) \otimes H_c^*(C, o \otimes \det C)$ can be represented by an element in $\pi_1^* A \wedge \pi_2^* A$. Then by the same argument as in Proposition 3.2, T represents the diagonal. Hence (A, A^*) is a reduction. $\square$

6.2.1 Gysin sequences Let C be a manifold and $\pi : E \to C$ an oriented sphere bundle over C with fiber S^k. Then we have an exact sequence [11, Section 14]

$$\cdots \to H^*(C) \xrightarrow{\pi^*} H^*(E) \xrightarrow{\pi_*} H^{*-k}(C) \xrightarrow{\wedge e} H^{*+1}(C) \to \cdots,$$

where e is the Euler class of E. In this section, we generalize it to the setting of flow categories. This construction plays an important role in proving the uniqueness of the cohomology ring of exact symplectic fillings of a flexibly fillable contact manifold in [79].

Definition 6.17 Let $\mathcal{C}$ be an oriented flow category. A k–sphere bundle over $\mathcal{C}$ is a functor $\pi : \mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{C}$ such that π maps E_i to C_i and $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}^E$ to $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}^C$, both $\pi : E_i \to C_i$ and $\pi : \mathcal{M}_{i,j}^E \to \mathcal{M}_{i,j}^C$ are k–sphere bundles, and $s_{i,j}^E$ and $t_{i,j}^E$ are bundle maps covering $s_{i,j}$ and $t_{i,j}$. A k–sphere bundle $\pi : \mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{C}$ is said to

be oriented if and only if $\pi \colon E_i \to C_i$ are oriented sphere bundles, and there is an orientation on each bundle $\pi \colon \mathcal{M}^E_{i,j} \to \mathcal{M}^C_{i,j}$ with both bundle maps $s^E_{i,j}$ and $t^E_{i,j}$ preserving the orientation.

Proposition 6.18 *Let $\pi \colon \mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{C}$ be an oriented k–sphere bundle. Then $\mathcal{E}$ is oriented using the convention*

$$[E_i] = [C_i][S^k], \quad [\mathcal{M}^E_{i,j}] = (-1)^k[\mathcal{M}^C_{i,j}][S^k].$$

Proof This is proven in Definition/Proposition 7.2.   □

Theorem 6.19 *Let $\pi \colon \mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{C}$ be an oriented k–sphere bundle. There exist flow morphisms $\Pi^* \colon \mathcal{C} \Rightarrow \mathcal{E}$ and $\Pi_* \colon \mathcal{E} \Rightarrow \mathcal{C}$ and defining data Θ and Ξ for $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{E}$, respectively (where Θ is minimal but Ξ is defining data with reductions), such that we have a short exact sequence*

$$0 \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}, \Theta) \xrightarrow{\phi^{\Pi^*}} \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{E}, \Xi) \xrightarrow{\phi^{\Pi_*}} \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}, \Theta) \to 0.$$

Assume $\mathcal{C}$ has a grading structure (Definition 2.13). Then we have a long exact sequence

(6-5) $$\cdots \to H^*(\mathcal{C}) \xrightarrow{\pi^*} H^*(\mathcal{E}) \xrightarrow{\pi_*} H^{*-k}(\mathcal{C}) \to H^{*+1}(\mathcal{C}) \to \cdots.$$

Otherwise, we have an exact triangle (without grading).

Before giving the proof, we first explain the defining data Θ and Ξ. The defining data for $\mathcal{C}$ is any minimal defining data Θ. For the defining data of $\mathcal{E}$, we fix an angular form $\psi_i \in \Omega^k(E_i)$ such that $\mathrm{d}\psi_i = -\pi^* e_i$, where e_i is the Euler class (viewed in $\Omega^{k+1}(C_i)$) of the sphere bundle $E_i \to C_i$. When k is even, the cohomology class $[e_i]$ is zero. Hence when k is even, we can choose ψ such that $e_i = 0 \in \Omega^{k+1}(C_i)$. Assume $\{\theta_{i,a}\}$ is the chosen basis in the minimal defining data Θ, with $\{\theta^*_{i,a}\}$ the dual basis. Then for each $\theta_{i,a}$ there exists a unique $\eta \in \langle \theta_{i,a} \rangle = \langle \theta^*_{i,a} \rangle$ such that $[(-1)^{|\theta^*_{i,a}|+1}\theta^*_{i,a} \wedge e_i] = [\eta]$ in cohomology. In other words, we can find $\eta_{i,a}$ such that $(-1)^{|\theta^*_{i,a}|+1}\theta^*_{i,a} \wedge e_i - \mathrm{d}\eta_{i,a} \in \langle \theta_{i,a} \rangle$. If we write $m = \dim H^*(C_i)$, then we define

$$A_i = A^*_i := \langle \pi^*\theta_{i,1}, \ldots, \pi^*\theta_{i,m}, \pi^*\theta^*_{i,1} \wedge \psi_i - \pi^*\eta_{i,1}, \ldots, \pi^*\theta^*_{i,m} \wedge \psi_i - \pi^*\eta_{i,m} \rangle.$$

The above construction ensures that d is closed on $A_i = A^*_i$. Since $\int_{E_i} \pi^*\theta_{i,a} \wedge (\pi^*\theta^*_{i,b} \wedge \psi_i - \pi^*\eta_{i,b}) = \int_{C_i} \theta_{i,a} \wedge \theta^*_{i,b}$, for any nonzero vector v in $A = A^*$, there is a vector $u \in A = A^*$ with $\langle v, u \rangle \neq 0$. In particular, the pairing is nondegenerate on $A \otimes A^*$. That $A \to \Omega^*(E_i)$ induces a surjection on cohomology follows from the Gysin sequence associated to the sphere bundle $E_i \to C_i$. Therefore by Proposition 6.16, (A_i, A^*_i) is a reduction for E_i. Moreover, we can choose $\eta_{i,a}$ such that the following holds:

Lemma 6.20 *We write $\pi^*\theta^*_{i,a} \wedge \psi_i - \pi^*\eta_{i,a}$ as $\xi_{i,a}$. Then there exist $\{\eta_{i,a}\}$ from the construction above such that $\langle \pi^*\theta_{i,a}, \xi_{i,b} \rangle_i \neq 0$ if and only if $a = b$ and $\langle \xi_{i,a}, \xi_{i,b} \rangle_i = 0$ for any a and b.*

Proof We have some freedom in the choice of $\eta_{i,a}$, since we can modify it by an element in $\langle \theta_{i,a} \rangle$. The first claim is obvious by integrating the S^k fiber first. The only nontrivial part is proving $\langle \xi_{i,a}, \xi_{i,b} \rangle_i = 0$ for any a and b. We will proceed by induction. Assume for $a, b \leq N < \dim H^*(C_i)$ that $\langle \xi_{i,a}, \xi_{i,b} \rangle_i = 0$.

Then we can find $\xi_{i,N+1}$ such that $\langle \xi_{i,a}, \xi_{i,N+1} \rangle_i = 0$ for any $a \leq N + 1$. We first take any $\bar{\xi}_{i,N+1}$ in the form $\pi^* \theta^*_{i,N+1} \wedge \psi_i - \pi^* \bar{\eta}_{i,N+1} \in A$ from the construction above. Then we define

$$\xi_{i,N+1} := \bar{\bar{\xi}}_{i,N+1} - \sum_{a=1}^{N} \langle \xi_{i,a}, \bar{\bar{\xi}}_{i,N+1} \rangle_i \pi^* \theta_{i,a}.$$

It is straightforward to check that $\langle \xi_{i,a}, \xi_{i,N+1} \rangle_i = 0$ for any $a \leq N$. Now note that, by degree reasons, if $\langle \xi_{i,N+1}, \xi_{i,N+1} \rangle_i \neq 0$ we must have $|\xi_{i,N+1}| = \frac{1}{2} \dim E_i$. In this case,

$$\langle \xi_{i,N+1}, \xi_{i,N+1} \rangle_i = ((-1)^{(\dim E_i/2)+1} - 1) \int_{C_i} \eta_{i,N+1} \wedge \theta^*_{i,N+1}.$$

However, no matter what the parity of $\frac{1}{2} \dim E_i$ is, we can add a multiple of $\pi^* \theta_{i,N+1}$ to $\xi_{i,N+1}$ to make sure that $\langle \xi_{i,N+1}, \xi_{i,N+1} \rangle_i = 0$. Note that this modification does not affect the property that $\langle \xi_{i,a}, \xi_{i,N+1} \rangle_i = 0$ for any $a \leq N$, as $\langle \xi_{i,a}, \pi^* \theta_{i,N+1} \rangle_i = 0$ for $a \leq N$. The above argument also proves the induction foundation when $N = 1$. Hence the claim follows. $\qquad \square$

In order to obtain the proof of Theorem 6.19, we need to use the following approximations of Dirac currents of diagonals and primitives f^n on the sphere bundle $E_i \to C_i$:

Proposition 6.21 *Let $\pi \colon E \to C$ be an oriented k–sphere bundle over an oriented closed manifold. Let $A = A^*$ be the reduction on $\Omega^*(E)$ built from the previous discussion (in particular, we choose ψ_i such that $d\psi_i = 0$ if k is even). Suppose T is the closed form in $\pi_1^* A \wedge \pi_2^* A$ representing the diagonal in the definition of reduction. Then there exist approximations $\delta^{E,n}$ of the Dirac current of the diagonal Δ_E such that:*

(1) *There exist forms $f^{E,n}$ on $E \times E$ such that*

$$d f^{E,n} = \delta^{E,n} - T.$$

(2) *Lemmas 3.7 and 3.14 hold for $f^{E,n}$. In particular, the construction in Section 6.2 works for $f^{E,n}$.*

(3) *Let $\pi_{1,2}$ denote the projection $E \times E \to C \times C$. Then $f^{E,n}$ can be written as sums of differential forms in the form $(\pi_{1,2}^* \alpha) \wedge \beta$ with $\alpha \in \Omega^*(C \times C)$ and $\deg(\beta) \leq k$, ie the fiber degree of $f^{E,n}$ is at most k. In other words, if $v_1, \ldots, v_{k+1}$ are $k + 1$ vertical vectors in $T_p(E \times E)$ for $p \in C \times C$, then $f^{E,n}(v_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge v_{k+1} \wedge \cdots) = 0$.*

Proof See Appendix B. $\qquad \square$

Proof of Theorem 6.19 The defining data Θ and Ξ are explained above. We now explain the flow morphisms Π_* and Π^*. On the space level, Π_* is the same as the identity flow morphism $\mathfrak{I}^E$ for $\mathcal{E}$. The only difference is that the source map on Π^* is the projection to C_i. Similarly, Π_* from $\mathcal{E}$ to $\mathcal{C}$ on the space level is the same as the identity flow morphism $\mathfrak{I}^E$, but the target map for Π_* is the projection to C_i. We point out here that if the flow category $\mathcal{C}$ is an actual space (concentrated in one level), then Π^* and Π_* induce π^* and π_* on cohomology by definition.

With the defining data Θ and Ξ, we get maps

$$(6\text{-}6) \qquad 0 \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}, \Theta) \xrightarrow{\phi^{\Pi^*}} \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{E}, \Xi) \xrightarrow{\phi^{\Pi_*}} \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}, \Theta) \to 0.$$

We will show (6-6) is a short exact sequence. Using the reduction from Lemma 6.20, the dual basis of $\{\pi^*\theta_{i,a}\} \cup \{\xi_{i,a}\}$ is $\{\xi_{i,a}\} \cup \{\pi^*\theta_{i,a}\}$, up to sign. Then $\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{E}, \Xi)$ can be decomposed into $V_0 \oplus V_1$ as a vector space, where V_0 is generated by $\langle \pi^*\theta_{i,a} \rangle$ and V_1 is generated by $\langle \xi_{i,a} \rangle$. Next we use approximations of the Dirac currents of the diagonal and primitives f_E^n from Proposition 6.21. By Proposition 6.21(3), if $\gamma \in \langle \pi^*\theta_{i,v+k} \rangle$, then $\Pi^{*v,k}_{i_1,\dots,i_p|j_1,\dots,j_q}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^{C,n}, \dots, f_{v+i_p}^{C,n}, f_{v+j_1}^{E,n}, \dots, f_{v+j_q}^{E,n}, \gamma]$ in the definition of Φ^{Π^*} is zero. Otherwise we cannot cover the fiber directions to get a nonzero integration, as the total fiber degree contributed by $f_{v+j_1}^{E,n}, \dots, f_{v+j_q}^{E,n}$ is at most kq, but the total fiber dimension in $\Pi^{*v,k}_{i_1,\dots,i_p|j_1,\dots,j_q}$ is $k(q+1)$. Hence $\mathrm{im}\, \phi^{\Pi^*} \subset V_0$. Moreover, ϕ^{Π^*} is an isomorphism onto V_0, as it is the identity plus a strictly upper triangle matrix, similar to the proof of Theorem 3.10 using the identity flow morphism. Similarly, $V_0 \subset \ker \phi^{\Pi_*}$ and $\phi^{\Pi_*}|_{V_1} : V_1 \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C}, \Theta)$ is an isomorphism. Therefore (6-6) is a short exact sequence, and the induced long exact sequence is the Gysin exact sequence (6-5). $\square$

Remark 6.22 There are two cases of the Gysin exact sequence for which we do not need to appeal to Proposition 6.21:

(1) When $\mathcal{C}$ is a single space C, the reduction of the sphere bundle E can be viewed as decomposed into two copies of $H^*(C)$, which corresponds to the classical Gysin exact sequence. This is explained in Proposition 6.24.

(2) When $\dim C_i \le 1$ for all i, $\deg f^{E,n_i} = \dim C_i + k - 1 \le k$, and Proposition 6.21(3) holds tautologically for any defining data.

These two cases are enough for the argument in [79].

By Corollaries 3.13 and 3.22, we have the following:

Corollary 6.23 *If $\mathcal{C}$ is a Morse flow category and $\mathcal{E}$ an oriented k–sphere bundle over $\mathcal{C}$, then the Gysin exact sequence only depends on $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}^E$ of dimension no greater than $2k$.*

The next proposition follows from direct computation:

Proposition 6.24 *If $\mathcal{C}$ is a single space C, then an oriented k–sphere bundle $\mathcal{E}$ over $\mathcal{C}$ is an oriented k–sphere bundle $\pi : E \to C$. Then the Gysin exact sequence in Theorem 6.19 is the classical Gysin exact sequence*

$$\cdots \to H^i(C) \xrightarrow{\pi^*} H^i(E) \xrightarrow{\pi_*} H^{i-k}(C) \xrightarrow{\wedge(-1)^{\dim C+1}e} H^{i+1}(C) \to \cdots,$$

where $e \in H^*(C)$ is the Euler class of $\pi : E \to C$ and π_* is the integration along the fiber following the convention in [11, Section 6].

Proof Let $\{\theta_1, \dots, \theta_k\}$ and $\{\theta_1^*, \dots, \theta_k^*\}$ be representatives of a basis and the dual basis of $H^*(C)$. Assume ψ is the Thom class of E such that $d\psi = -\pi^*e$, where e is a closed differential form representing

the Euler class. $\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C})$ is $\langle \theta_1^*, \ldots, \theta_k^* \rangle = \langle \theta_1, \ldots, \theta_k \rangle$ with zero differential. On the other hand, by the proof of Theorem 6.19, $\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{E})$ is the reduction $A^* = A$ in the form

$$\langle \pi^* \theta_1, \ldots, \pi^* \theta_k, \xi_1 := \pi^* \theta_1^* \wedge \psi - \pi^* \eta_1, \ldots, \xi_k := \pi^* \theta_k^* \wedge \psi - \pi^* \eta_k \rangle.$$

The differential d_A on $\pi^* \theta_i$ is zero. Since (6-3), in this case, can be equivalently expressed for $\gamma \in A$, we have

$$\langle d_{A,0} \xi_i, \gamma \rangle = (-1)^{|\xi_i|(\dim E + 1) + \dim E} \int_E \pi^* ((-1)^{|\theta_i^*| + 1} \theta_i^* \wedge e - d\eta_i) \wedge \gamma.$$

Since $\int d\xi_i \wedge \pi^* \theta_j = 0$, it is sufficient to compute the case when $\gamma = \xi_j$:

$$\langle d_{A,0} \xi_i, \xi_j \rangle = (-1)^{|\xi_i|(\dim E + 1) + \dim E} \int_E \pi^* ((-1)^{|\theta_i^*| + 1} \theta_i^* \wedge e - d\eta_i) \wedge (\pi^* \theta_j^* \wedge -\pi^* \eta_j)$$

$$= (-1)^{|\xi_i|(\dim E + 1) + \dim E} \int_E \pi^* ((-1)^{|\theta_i^*| + 1} \theta_i^* \wedge e - d\eta_i) \wedge \pi^* \theta_j^* \wedge \psi.$$

Note that

$$\int_E \pi^* (d\eta_i \wedge \theta_j^*) \wedge \psi = \int_C d\eta_i \wedge \theta_j^* = \int d(\eta_i \wedge \theta_j^*) = 0.$$

Then we have

$$\langle d_{A,0} \xi_i, \xi_j \rangle = (-1)^{|\xi_i|(\dim E + 1) + \dim E} \int_E \pi^* ((-1)^{|\theta_i^*| + 1} \theta_i^* \wedge e \wedge \theta_j^*) \wedge \psi$$

$$= (-1)^{|\xi_i| \dim E + \dim C + 1} \int_C \theta_i^* \wedge e \wedge \theta_j^*.$$

On the other hand,

$$\langle \pi^* \theta_j, \xi_j \rangle = (-1)^{|\theta_j| + |\xi_j| \dim E}.$$

As a consequence,

$$d_{A,0} \xi_i = \sum_j (-1)^{|\xi_i| \dim E + \dim C + 1 + |\theta_j| + |\xi_j| \dim E} \left(\int_C \theta_i^* \wedge e \wedge \theta_j^* \right) \pi^* \theta_j.$$

Note that to have a nonzero integration it is necessary to have $|\xi_i| + |\xi_j| + 1 = \dim E$, and hence

$$|\xi_i| \dim E + \dim C + 1 + |\theta_j| + |\xi_j| \dim E = \dim C + 1 + |\theta_j| = \dim C + |\xi_i| \mod 2$$

and

$$d_{A,0} \xi_i = (-1)^{\dim C + |\xi_i|} \pi^* \left(\sum_j \left(\int_C \theta_i^* \wedge e \wedge \theta_j^* \right) \theta_j \right).$$

Since

$$\left\langle \theta_j^*, \left(\int_C \theta_i^* \wedge e \wedge \theta_j^* \right) \theta_j \right\rangle = (-1)^{|\theta_j^*| \cdot |\theta_j|} \int_C \theta_j^* \wedge \theta_i^* \wedge e = (-1)^{|\theta_j|^2} \langle \theta_j^*, \theta_i^* \wedge e \rangle,$$

we know that

(6-7) $$\left[(-1)^{\dim C + |\xi_i|} \sum_j \left(\int_C \theta_i^* \wedge e \wedge \theta_j^* \right) \theta_j \right] = [(-1)^{\dim C + 1} \theta_i^* \wedge e] \in H^*(C).$$

Next, by Theorem 3.21 and similar computation as above, $\phi^{\Pi^*}(\theta_i) = \pi^* \theta_i$ and $\phi^{\Pi_*}(\xi_i) = \theta_i^*$. Then the connecting map $\delta: H^{*-k}(C) \to H^{*+1}(C)$ is given by $\delta(\theta_i^*) = (-1)^{\dim C + 1} \theta_i^* \wedge e$ by (6-7). $\qquad \square$

Remark 6.25 To explain the sign twist compared to [11, Section 14], recall from (6-3) that $d_A \xi_i$ is, roughly speaking, $(-1)^{\dim E + |\xi_i|} d\xi_i$ (then project to A). Then $(-1)^{\dim E + |\xi_i|} d\xi_i = (-1)^{\dim C + 1} \pi^* \theta_i^* \wedge e$.

In other words, if we consider the Gysin exact sequence following [11, Section 14] but with the cochain complex $(\Omega^*(E), (-1)^{\dim E + *}d)$, then we get the long exact sequence with sign twist in Proposition 6.24.

Next, we consider the functoriality of Gysin exact sequences.

Definition 6.26 Let $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ be two oriented flow categories, and $\pi_E : \mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{C}$ and $\pi_F : \mathcal{F} \to \mathcal{D}$ be two oriented k–sphere bundles. Assume $\mathfrak{H} : \mathcal{C} \Rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ is an oriented flow morphism. A compatible k–sphere bundle $\mathfrak{T}$ over $\mathfrak{H}$ is a flow morphism (not oriented a priori) from $\mathcal{E}$ to $\mathcal{F}$ such that $\mathcal{T}_{i,j}$ is an S^k–bundle over $\mathcal{H}_{i,j}$ and s^T, t^T are bundle maps covering s^H, t^H. It is oriented if the sphere bundles $\mathcal{T}_{i,j} \to \mathcal{H}_{i,j}$ are oriented and s^T, t^T preserve the orientation.

Similar to Proposition 6.18, we have that if the k–sphere bundle $\mathfrak{T}$ over $\mathfrak{H}$ is oriented, then $\mathcal{T}$ is an oriented flow morphism from $\mathcal{E}$ to $\mathcal{F}$ with orientation $[\mathcal{T}_{i,j}] = [\mathcal{H}_{i,j}][S^k]$.

Proposition 6.27 Let $\mathcal{C}$ and $\mathcal{D}$ be two oriented flow categories, and $\pi_E : \mathcal{E} \to \mathcal{C}$ and $\pi_F : \mathcal{F} \to \mathcal{D}$ be two oriented k–sphere bundles. Assume $\mathfrak{H} : \mathcal{C} \Rightarrow \mathcal{D}$ is an oriented flow morphism and $\mathfrak{T}$ is a compatible oriented k–sphere bundle over $\mathfrak{H}$. Then we have a morphism between the Gysin exact sequences below, assuming they have grading structures. Otherwise it is a commutative diagram of exact triangles:

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
\cdots \longrightarrow & H^*(\mathcal{C}) & \xrightarrow{\pi^*} & H^*(\mathcal{E}) & \xrightarrow{\pi_*} & H^{*-k}(\mathcal{C}) & \longrightarrow & H^{*+1}(\mathcal{C}) & \longrightarrow \cdots \\
& \downarrow{\scriptstyle\phi^H} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle\phi^T} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle\phi^H} & & \downarrow{\scriptstyle\phi^H} & \\
\cdots \longrightarrow & H^*(\mathcal{D}) & \xrightarrow{\pi^*} & H^*(\mathcal{F}) & \xrightarrow{\pi_*} & H^{*-k}(\mathcal{D}) & \longrightarrow & H^{*+1}(\mathcal{D}) & \longrightarrow \cdots
\end{array}
$$

Proof We define $\mathfrak{P}$ to be a flow morphism from $\mathcal{C}$ to $\mathcal{F}$ which on the space level is same as $\mathfrak{T}$, but the source map is $\pi \circ t_{i,j}^T$, where π is the projection $E_i \to C_i$. We claim that $\phi^P = \phi^{T \circ \Pi_E^*} = \phi^{\Pi_F^* \circ H}$. By the argument in Theorem 3.33, the contribution from $\mathfrak{T} \circ \Pi_E^*$ containing $(\Pi_E^*)_{i,j}$ for $i < j$ is zero due to the extra interval direction in $(\Pi_E^*)_{i,j}$. Then it is easy to identify $\phi^P = \phi^{T \circ \Pi_E^*}$ on the nose. On the other hand, the contribution from $\Pi_F^* \circ \mathfrak{H}$ containing $(\Pi_F^*)_{i,j}$ for $i < j$ is zero and $(\Pi_F^*)_{j,j} \times_{D_j} \mathcal{H}_{i,j} \simeq \mathcal{T}_{i,j}$ by Definition 6.26. Hence ϕ^P can also be identified with $\phi^{\Pi_F^* \circ H}$ on the nose. Then by Theorem 3.28, $\phi^T \circ \pi^*$ is homotopic to $\pi^* \circ \phi^H$. Similarly, $\phi^H \circ \pi_*$ is homotopic to $\pi_* \circ \phi^T$. By the same argument as in Theorem 6.19, using the special defining data in Proposition 6.21, the homotopies above and ϕ^T satisfy the conditions of Lemma 3.40, and hence the claim follows. $\square$

7 Equivariant theory

The aim of this section is to construct an equivariant theory for a flow category with a smooth group action. Our method is based on the approximation of the homotopy quotient. In the context of Floer theory, a construction in this spirit can be found in [16]. All the results in this section, namely Theorems 7.1 and 7.14, can be generalized to proper flow categories with local systems. However, for simplicity, we only consider oriented flow categories.

7.1 Parametrized cohomology

Similar to the construction of parametrized symplectic homology in [16], we need the parametrized cohomology of an oriented flow category, ie we need to take the product of a flow category $\mathcal{C}$ with a closed oriented manifold B. Since taking a product with B automatically falls into the Morse–Bott case, using the theory developed in previous sections, we have a direct, also geometric construction. Then all that remains are some orientation checks.

Let $\mathcal{C} = \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$ be an oriented flow category and B an oriented compact manifold throughout this section. We construct the product flow category $\mathcal{C} \times B$ first. The parametrized cohomology is defined to be the cohomology of $\mathcal{C} \times B$. Each map $f: B_1 \to B_2$ induces an oriented flow morphism $\mathfrak{H}(f): \mathcal{C} \times B_2 \Rightarrow \mathcal{C} \times B_1$. Similarly, a homotopy induces a flow homotopy. The main result of this subsection is that, after taking the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex, we have a contravariant functor by this product construction.

Theorem 7.1 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be an oriented flow category. Then we have a contravariant functor*

$$\mathcal{C}\times: \mathcal{K}(\mathcal{M}an) \to \mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}h),$$

where $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{M}an)$ is the category whose objects are closed oriented manifolds and morphisms are homotopy classes of smooth maps.

7.1.1 Product flow categories The first step towards the construction of the functor $\mathcal{C}\times$ is to construct the functor on objects, that is, the product flow categories.

Definition/Proposition 7.2 *If we orient $C_i \times B$ and $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times B$ by $[C_i \times B] = [C_i][B]$ and $[\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times B] = (-1)^{\dim B}[\mathcal{M}_{i,j}][B]$, then $\mathcal{C} \times B = \{C_i \times B, \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times B\}$ is an oriented flow category.*

Remark 7.3 The reason we oriented $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times B$ by $(-1)^{\dim B}[\mathcal{M}_{i,j}][B]$ is that in Definition 5.2 and Proposition 5.5 we mod out the $\mathbb{R}$ translation from the right in the construction of coherent orientations in applications which motivate those definitions.

Definition 7.4 Let $E_1 \to M_1$ and $E_2 \to M_2$ be two vector bundles. Then $E_1 \boxplus E_2$ is defined to $\pi_1^* E_1 \oplus \pi_2^* E_2$ over $M_1 \times M_2$, where $\pi_1, \pi_2: M_1 \times M_2 \to M_1, M_2$ are the projections.

Proof of Definition/Proposition 7.2 It is clear that we only need to verify that $\mathcal{C} \times B$ satisfies the orientation property in Definition 2.15. Note that

$$\partial[\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times B] = \sum_j (-1)^{\dim B + m_{i,j}} [\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}][B].$$

Let N_B be the normal bundle of Δ_B in $B \times B$, and orient it by $[\Delta_B][N_B] = [B][B]$. Then the normal bundle of $\Delta_{C_j \times B}$ is $N_j \boxplus N_B$. If we orient $N_j \boxplus N_B$ by the product orientation, then $[\Delta_{C_j \times B}][N_j \boxplus N_B] = [C_j \times B][C_j \times B]$, ie $[N_j \boxplus N_B]$ satisfies our orientation convention (2-4) for $C_j \times B$.

Then

$$[N_i \boxplus N_B]\partial[\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times B|_{\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \times B}]$$

$$= (-1)^{\dim B + m_{i,j}}[N_i \boxplus N_B][\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}][B]$$

$$= (-1)^{\dim B + m_{i,j} + \dim B(m_{i,k}-1) + \dim B^2}[N_i][\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}][\Delta_B][N_B]$$

$$= (-1)^{\dim B + m_{i,j} + \dim B(m_{i,k}-1) + c_j m_{i,j} + \dim B^2}[\mathcal{M}_{i,j}][\mathcal{M}_{j,k}][B][B]$$

$$= (-1)^{\dim B + m_{i,j} + \dim B(m_{i,k}-1) + c_j m_{i,j} + \dim B^2 + \dim B m_{j,k}}[\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times B][\mathcal{M}_{j,k} \times B].$$

Because

$$\dim B + m_{i,j} + \dim B(m_{i,k} - 1) + c_j m_{i,j} + \dim B^2 + \dim B m_{j,k}$$
$$= \dim B + m_{i,j} + (m_{i,j} + \dim B)(c_j + \dim B) \quad \mod 2,$$

by Definition 2.15, $\mathcal{C} \times B$ is an oriented flow category. $\qquad\square$

Remark 7.5 It is very natural to expect a Künneth formula for $\mathcal{C} \times B$. Indeed, $H(\mathcal{C} \times B) \simeq H(\mathcal{C}) \otimes H(B)$. Since we will not use it, we omit the proof.

7.1.2 Flow morphisms between product flow categories The second step is to construct the functor on morphisms: we want to associate every smooth map $f : B_1 \to B_2$ with a cochain map $\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times B_2) \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times B_1)$. To that end, we first construct a flow morphism $\mathfrak{H}(f)$ from $\mathcal{C} \times B_2$ to $\mathcal{C} \times B_1$, which is defined similarly to the identity flow morphism of $\mathcal{C} \times B_1$. Then the associated cochain map is $\phi^{H(f)}$, defined by Theorem 3.21.

Definition 7.6 Let $\mathcal{C}$ be an oriented flow category and $f : B_1 \to B_2$ a smooth map between two closed oriented manifolds. Then we define $\mathfrak{H}(f) = \{\mathcal{H}_{i,j}^f\}$ as follows:

(1) $\mathcal{H}_{i,j}^f = \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j-i] \times B_1$ with the product orientation when $i \le j$, and $\mathcal{H}_{i,j}^f = \varnothing$ when $i > j$.

(2) The source and target maps s and t are defined by

$$s : \mathcal{H}_{i,j}^f \to C_i \times B_2, \quad (m, t, b) \mapsto (s^C(m), f(b)) \quad \text{and} \quad t : \mathcal{H}_{i,j}^f \to C_j \times B_1, \quad (m, t, b) \mapsto (t^C(m), b)$$

for $m \in \mathcal{M}_{i,j}$, $t \in [0, j-i]$ and $b \in B_1$, and where s^C and t^C are source and target maps of $\mathcal{C}$.

(3) For $m \in \mathcal{M}_{i,j}, n \in \mathcal{M}_{j,k}, t \in [0, k-j]$ and $b_1 \in B_1, b_2 \in B_2$ such that $(m, n) \in \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{M}_{j,k}$ and $f(b_1) = b_2$, we define

$$m_L : (\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times B_2) \times_j \mathcal{H}_{j,k}^f \to \mathcal{H}_{i,k}^f \quad \text{by} \quad (m, b_2, n, t, b_1) \mapsto (m, n, t + j - i, b_1).$$

(4) For $m \in \mathcal{M}_{i,j}, n \in \mathcal{M}_{j,k}, t \in [0, j-i]$ and $b_1 \in B_1$ such that $(m, n) \in \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_k \mathcal{M}_{j,k}$ and $f(b_1) = b_2$, we define

$$m_R : \mathcal{H}_{i,j}^f \times_j (\mathcal{M}_{j,k} \times B_1) \to \mathcal{H}_{i,k}^f \quad \text{by} \quad (m, t, b_1, n, b_1) \mapsto (m, n, t, b_1).$$

Proposition 7.7 *The flow morphism $\mathfrak{H}(f)$ in Definition 7.6 is an oriented flow morphism $\mathcal{C} \times B_2 \Rightarrow \mathcal{C} \times B_1$.*

Proof All we need to do is the orientation check. It is analogous to the proof of Definition/Lemma 3.23. $\square$

Remark 7.8 In other words, $\mathfrak{H}(f)$ can be viewed as the identity flow morphism on $\mathcal{C} \times B_1$ with source maps twisted by f. In view of the Künneth formula, the morphism induced by $\mathfrak{H}(f)$ is given by $\mathrm{id} \otimes f^*$ twisted by an appropriate sign. We can similarly define another flow morphism from $\mathcal{C} \times B_1$ to $\mathcal{C} \times B_2$ as the identity flow morphism on $\mathcal{C} \times B_1$ with target maps twisted by f. Then the induced map on cohomology is $\mathrm{id} \otimes f_*$ twisted by an appropriate sign, where $f_* : H^*(B_1) \to H^{*+\dim B_2 - \dim B_1}(B_2)$ is the pushforward.

7.1.3 Flow homotopies between product flow categories For an oriented flow category $\mathcal{C}$, we now have enough ingredients to define the functor $\mathcal{C} \times : \mathcal{K}(\mathcal{M}an) \to \mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}h)$:

$$B \mapsto \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times B) \qquad\qquad \text{on objects,}$$

$$(B_1 \xrightarrow{f} B_2) \mapsto \left(\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times B_2) \xrightarrow{\phi^{H(f)}} \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times B_1)\right) \quad \text{on morphisms.}$$

To finish the proof of Theorem 7.1, we still need to show that homotopic smooth maps induce homotopic cochain maps, and the functoriality of $\mathcal{C} \times$.

Let $f, g : B_1 \to B_2$ be two smooth maps and $D : [0, 1] \times B_1 \to B_2$ a homotopy between them such that $D|_{\{0\} \times B_1} = f$ and $D_{\{1\} \times B_1} = g$. We claim there is a flow homotopy $\mathscr{Y}(D)$ between the $\mathfrak{H}(f)$ and $\mathfrak{H}(g)$.

Definition 7.9 We define $\mathscr{Y}(D) = \{\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}^D\}$ as follows:

(1) For $i \leq j$, we define $\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}^D = [0, 1] \times \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j - i] \times B_1$ with the product orientation. For $i < j$, we define $\mathcal{Y}_{i,j}^D = \varnothing$.

(2) The source map s is defined as

$$s : [0, 1] \times \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j - i] \times B_1 \to C_i \times B_2, \quad (z, m, t, b) \mapsto (s^C(m), D_z(b)).$$

(3) The target map t is defined as

$$t : [0, 1] \times \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j - i] \times B_1 \to C_i \times B_1, \quad (z, m, t, b) \mapsto (t^C(m), b).$$

(4) We define $\iota_f : \mathcal{H}_{i,j}^f \Rrightarrow \{0\} \times \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j - i] \times B_1 \subset \mathcal{Y}_{i,j}^D$.

(5) We define $\iota_g : \mathcal{H}_{i,j}^g \Rrightarrow \{1\} \times \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j - i] \times B_1 \subset \mathcal{Y}_{i,j}^D$.

(6) We define

$$m_L : (\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times B_2) \times_j ([0, 1] \times \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \times [0, k - j] \times B_1) \to [0, 1] \times \mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times [0, k - i] \times B_1 = \mathcal{K}_{i,k}^D,$$

$$(m, b_2, z, n, t, b_1) \mapsto (z, m, n, t + j - i, b_1).$$

(7) We define

$$m_R : ([0, 1] \times \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j - i] \times B_1) \times_j (\mathcal{M}_{j,k} \times B_1) \to [0, 1] \times \mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times [0, k - i] \times B_1 = \mathcal{Y}_{i,k}^D,$$

$$(z, m, t, b_1, n, b_1) \mapsto (z, m, n, t, b_1).$$

Proposition 7.10 $\mathscr{Y}(D)$ *in Definition 7.9 is an oriented flow homotopy from* $\mathfrak{H}(f)$ *to* $\mathfrak{H}(g)$*.*

Proof We need only check the orientations, and it is analogous to the proof of Definition/Lemma 3.23. □

To complete the proof of Theorem 7.1, we still have to prove the functoriality. Let $g\colon B_1 \to B_2$ and $f\colon B_2 \to B_3$ be two smooth maps. It is not hard to see that $\mathfrak{H}(f)$ and $\mathfrak{H}(g)$ can be composed. We claim that there is a homotopy $\mathscr{Y}^c$ from $\mathfrak{H}(f) \circ \mathfrak{H}(g)$ to $\mathfrak{H}(f \circ g) \circ \mathfrak{I}$, where $\mathfrak{I}$ is the identity flow morphism on $\mathcal{C} \times B_3$.

Definition 7.11 $\mathscr{Y}^c = \{\mathcal{Y}^c_{i,j}\}$ is defined as follows:

- $\mathcal{Y}^c_{i,j} = [0,2] \times \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j-i] \times B_1$ with product orientation for $i \le j$. We define $\mathcal{Y}^c_{i,j} = \varnothing$ for $i < j$.

- The source map s is defined as
$$s\colon [0,2] \times \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j-i] \times B_1, \to C_i \times B_3, \quad (z, m, t, b) \mapsto (s^C(m), f \circ g(b)).$$

- The target map t is defined as
$$t\colon [0,2] \times \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j-i] \times B_1 \to C_i \times B_1, \quad (s, m, t, b) \mapsto (t^C(m), b).$$

- Since $(\mathcal{H}^{f \circ g} \circ \mathcal{I})_{i,k} = \bigcup_{i \le j \le k} \mathcal{I}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{H}^{f \circ g}_{j,k}$, we define $\iota_{\mathfrak{H}(f \circ g) \circ \mathfrak{I}}$ in two cases:

  (1) When $j = i$, we define $\iota_{\mathfrak{H}(f \circ g) \circ \mathfrak{I}}$ as
$$\mathcal{I}_{i,i} \times_i \mathcal{H}^{f \circ g}_{i,k} = (C_i \times B_3) \times_i (\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times [0, k-i] \times B_1) \to [0,2] \times \mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times [0, k-i] \times B_1,$$
$$(c, b_3, m, t, b_1) \mapsto (0, m, t, b_1).$$

  (2) When $j > i$, we define $\iota_{\mathfrak{H}(f \circ g) \circ \mathfrak{I}}$ on $\mathcal{I}_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{H}^{f \circ g}_{j,k}$ as
$$(\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j-i] \times B_3) \times_j (\mathcal{M}_{j,k} \times [0, j-i] \times B_1) \to [0,2] \times \mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times [0, k-i] \times B_1,$$
$$(m, t_1, b_3, n, t_2, b_1) \mapsto \left(\frac{t_1}{j-i}, m_L(m, n), t_2 + j - i, b_1 \right).$$

- For $j < k$, we define $\iota_{\mathfrak{H}(f) \circ \mathfrak{H}(g)}$ on $\mathcal{H}^f_{i,j} \times_j \mathcal{H}^g_{j,k}$ as
$$(\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j-i] \times B_2) \times_j (\mathcal{M}_{j,k} \times [0, k-j] \times B_1) \to [1,2] \times \mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times [0, k-i] \times B_1,$$
$$(m, t_1, b_2, n, t_2, b_1) \mapsto \left(\frac{t_2}{k-j} + 1, m, n, t_1 + k - j, b_1 \right).$$

When $k = j$, we define $\iota_{\mathfrak{H}(f) \circ \mathfrak{H}(g)}$ as
$$(\mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times [0, k-i] \times B_2) \times_j (C_k \times B_1) \to [1,2] \times \mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times [0, k-i] \times B_1, \quad (m, t, b_2, c, b_1) \mapsto (2, m, t, b_1).$$

- We define
$$m_L\colon (\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times B_3) \times_j ([0,2] \times \mathcal{M}_{j,k} \times [0, k-j] \times B_1) \to [1,2] \times \mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times [0, k-i] \times B_1 \subset \mathcal{Y}^c_{i,k},$$
$$(m, b_3, z, n, t, b_1) \mapsto \left(\tfrac{1}{2}z + 1, (m, n), t + j - i, b_1 \right).$$

- We define

$$m_R \colon ([0,2] \times \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j-i] \times B_1) \times_j (\mathcal{M}_{j,k} \times B_1) \to [0,1] \times \mathcal{M}_{i,k} \times [0, k-i] \times B_1 \subset \mathcal{Y}_{i,k}^c,$$

$$(z, m, t, b, n, b) \mapsto \left(\tfrac{1}{2} z, (m,n), t, b \right).$$

Proposition 7.12 $\mathcal{Y}^c$ *in Definition 7.11 is an oriented flow homotopy from* $\mathfrak{H}(f) \circ \mathfrak{H}(g)$ *to* $\mathfrak{H}(f \circ g) \circ \mathfrak{I}$.

Proof The proof is analogous to the proof of Definition/Lemma 3.23. □

Proof of Theorem 7.1 This follows by Definition/Proposition 7.2 and Propositions 7.7, 7.10 and 7.12. □

Remark 7.13 There is a generalization of the construction above. Let $B_1 \xleftarrow{f} B \xrightarrow{g} B_2$ be maps between closed oriented manifolds. Then there is a flow morphism $\mathfrak{H}$ from $\mathcal{C} \times B_2$ to $\mathcal{C} \times B_1$ with $\mathcal{H}_{i,j} := \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j-i] \times B$, where the source and target map are induced by g and f. The homotopy type of the induced cochain map is determined by the oriented bordism group $\Omega_{SO}^*(B_1, B_2)$, which is defined as follows: an element in $\Omega_{SO}^n(B_1, B_2)$ is represented by a closed oriented n–manifold M and two maps f and g from M to B_1 and B_2. The triples (M, f, g) and (N, f', g') are equivalent if and only if there is an oriented bordism D from M to N and two maps F and G from D to B_1 and B_2 extending f, g, f' and g'.

7.2 Equivariant cohomology

The functor $\mathcal{C} \times$ is not very interesting, because it is quite independent of the flow category $\mathcal{C}$. However, if $\mathcal{C}$ has a compact Lie group G acting on it, then the Borel construction, which is just a product modulo the G–action, merges some information of $\mathcal{C}$ into the "homotopy quotient". Thus nontrivial phenomena may arise from this construction. The first step towards the Borel construction is to upgrade Theorem 7.1:

Theorem 7.14 *Let the compact Lie group G act on $\mathcal{C}$ in an orientation-preserving way (Definition 7.15). Then there is a contravariant functor*

$$\mathcal{C} \times_G \colon \mathcal{K}(\mathcal{P}rin_G) \to \mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}h),$$

where $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{P}rin_G)$ is the category whose objects are closed oriented principal G–bundles and morphisms are G–equivariant homotopy classes of G–equivariant maps.

The classifying space $EG \to BG$ can be approximated by a sequence of closed oriented G–bundles $E_n \to B_n$ such that $\cdots \subset E_n \subset E_{n+1} \subset \cdots$. Note that $EG \to BG$ can be understood as the "G–equivariant homotopy colimit" of the diagram $\cdots \subset E_n \subset E_{n+1} \subset \cdots$. The classical Borel construction of the equivariant cohomology [38] suggests that the equivariant cochain complex of a flow category should be the composition of a homotopy limit and the functor $\mathcal{C} \times_G$ to the diagram $\cdots \subset E_n \subset E_{n+1} \subset \cdots$. We will construct this theory in this subsection. In particular, we will show that such a construction is independent of the approximation $\{E_n \to B_n\}$.

7.2.1 The functor $\mathcal{C} \times_G$

Definition 7.15 A G–action on an oriented flow category $\mathcal{C}$ consists of left G–actions on C_i and $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ such that the source, target and multiplication maps are G–equivariant. We say the G–action preserves the orientation if the G–actions on C_i and $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ preserve the orientations.

Let $E \to B$ be an oriented G–bundle. Assume G acts on $\mathcal{C}$ in a orientation-preserving manner. Then G acts from the right on $C_i \times E$ and $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times E$ by $(x, e) \cdot g = (g^{-1} \cdot c, e \cdot g)$. Let $C_i \times_G E$ and $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_G E$ denote quotients of the respective G–actions. If we orient B, $C_i \times_G E$ and $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_G E$ by $[B][G] = [E]$, $[C_i \times_G E][G] = [C_i][E]$ and $[\mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_G E][G] = (-1)^{\dim B}[\mathcal{M}_{i,j}][E]$, then Definition/Proposition 7.2 can be generalized to the following statement by an analogous proof:

Proposition 7.16 *If G acts on the oriented flow category $\mathcal{C}$ and preserves orientation, then $\mathcal{C} \times_G E = \{C_i \times_G E, \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times_G E\}$ is an oriented flow category.*

Moreover, Propositions 7.7, 7.10 and 7.12 can be generalized to the equivariant settings:

Proposition 7.17 *Assume G acts on the oriented flow category $\mathcal{C}$ and preserves the orientation. Let $E_1 \to B_2$ and $E_2 \to B_2$ be two oriented G–principal bundles.*

(1) *Let f be a smooth G–equivariant map $E_1 \to E_2$. Then there is an oriented flow morphism $\mathfrak{H}_G(f)$ from $\mathcal{C} \times_G E_2$ to $\mathcal{C} \times_G E_1$.*

(2) *Let g be another G–equivariant map $E_1 \to E_2$ and $D \colon [0, 1] \times E_1 \to E_2$ an equivariant homotopy between f and g. Then there is an oriented flow homotopy $\mathscr{Y}_G(D)$ between $\mathfrak{H}_G(f)$ and $\mathfrak{H}_G(g)$.*

(3) *Let $h \colon E_2 \to E_3$ be another equivariant map between two oriented G–principal bundles. Then there is an oriented flow homotopy $\mathscr{Y}_G^c$ from $\mathfrak{H}_G(h) \circ \mathfrak{H}_G(f)$ to $\mathfrak{H}_G(h \circ f) \circ \mathfrak{I}$.*

Then Theorem 7.14 follows from Propositions 7.16 and 7.17.

7.2.2 Approximations of classifying spaces

Definition 7.18 Let G be a compact Lie group. An approximation of the classifying space $EG \to BG$ is a sequence of oriented principal G–bundles $E_n \to B_n$ such that $E_n \subset E_{n+1}$ equivariantly. Moreover, for each $k \in \mathbb{N}$, there exists $N_k \in \mathbb{N}$ such that for all $n \geq N_k$, E_n is k–connected.

Given an approximation of the classifying space, we can compute the equivariant cohomology for G–actions:

Theorem 7.19 [38] *Let M be a compact manifold with a smooth G–action and $E_n \to B_n$ an approximation of the classifying space $EG \to BG$. Then*

$$\varprojlim H^*(M \times_G E_n) = H^*(M \times_G EG) = H_G^*(M).$$

Approximations of the classifying spaces can be constructed as follows. Fix an embedding $G \subset U(m)$. By $H(n,m)$, we mean the set of m orthogonal vectors in $\mathbb{C}^n$, which is a compact orientable smooth manifold. $U(m)$ acts on it with quotient the Grassmannian $\mathrm{Gr}(n,m)$, and $\{H(n,m) \to \mathrm{Gr}(n,m)\}$ serves as a finite-dimensional approximation of the classifying principal bundle $EU(m) \to BU(m)$ as $n \to \infty$. Then $EG \to BG$ can be approximated by $H(n,m) \to H(n,m)/G$. It was checked in [38] that this construction is an approximation in the sense of Definition 7.18.

7.2.3 Homotopy limit Since our construction uses an approximation, we need to take a limit in the end. Consider a directed system of cochain-complexes

$$\cdots \to A_3 \to A_2 \to A_1 \to A_0.$$

Then the limit $\varprojlim A_i$ is also a cochain complex. However, this limit is not very nice from the homotopy-theoretic point of view. If we change the maps in the directed system by homotopic maps, then the homotopy type of $\varprojlim A_i$ may change. In our setting, the cochain map is constructed only up to homotopy (Section 3.6), thus we need to apply a better limit called the homotopy limit, whose homotopy type is invariant under the replacement of homotopic maps. We recall some of the basic definitions and properties of homotopy limits from [60].

Let $\mathbb{N}^{\mathrm{op}}$ be the inverse directed set $\{\cdots \to 2 \to 1 \to 0\}$ and $\{A_n, \mu_{nm}\colon A_n \to A_m\}$ an inverse system of cochain complexes over this directed set:

$$\cdots \xrightarrow{\mu_4} A_3 \xrightarrow{\mu_3} A_2 \xrightarrow{\mu_2} A_1 \xrightarrow{\mu_1} A_0.$$

Then there is a map $v\colon \prod A_i \to \prod A_i$ such that $v(a_n) = \mu_n(a_n)$ over the basis $a_n \in A_n$. Then holim A_n is defined to be the homotopy kernel of $1 - v$, that is, $\Sigma^{-1} C(1-v)$, where $C(\cdot)$ denotes the mapping cone and Σ is shifting by 1.[26] Then we have a triangle in $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}h)$:

(7-1)

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\prod A_n & \xrightarrow{\;\;1-v\;\;} & \prod A_n \\
& \nwarrow \qquad \swarrow {\scriptstyle +1} & \\
& \text{holim } A_n &
\end{array}
$$

This construction is the infinite telescope construction. Thus it is clear that the homotopy limits of any final subsets of $\mathbb{N}^{\mathrm{op}}$ are homotopic to each other, and changing μ_i up to homotopy does not affect the homotopy type of the homotopy limit. There is a commutative diagram in $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}h)$,

(7-2)

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\text{holim } A_n & \longrightarrow & \prod A_n \\
\uparrow & \nearrow & \\
\varprojlim A_n &
\end{array}
$$

---

[26]We assume everything is graded by $\mathbb{Z}/2$ for simplicity. If everything is ungraded, then shifting just means multiplying the differential by -1. This also enters into the definition of mapping cone in the ungraded case.

When $\varprojlim^1 A_n = 0$, ie the Mittag-Leffler condition holds for A_n, then $\varprojlim A_n \to \mathrm{holim}\, A_n$ is a quasi-isomorphism [60, Remark 27]. This is the reason why sometimes we can use the limit instead of homotopy limit in applications, eg [16]. The long exact sequence from the triangle (7-1) implies we have the short exact sequence

$$0 \to \varprojlim^1 H^{*-1}(A_n) \to H^*(\mathrm{holim}\, A_n) \to \varprojlim H^*(A_n) \to 0.$$

7.2.4 Equivariant cochain complexes Now, we are ready to define the equivariant cochain complex of a flow category with a group action. Pick an approximation $E_0 \subset \cdots \subset E_i \subset \cdots$ of the classifying space such that E_i is oriented and G preserves the orientation. Then applying the functor $\mathcal{C} \times_G$ to this sequence, we get an inverse system in $\mathcal{K}(\mathcal{C}h)$,

$$\cdots \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E_2) \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E_1) \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E_0).$$

Definition 7.20 The equivariant cochain complex BC_G is defined as $\mathrm{holim}\,\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E_n)$.

Results in Section 3.6 imply that the homotopy type of BC_G is independent of the auxiliary defining data. To get a canonical theory, we still need to check that BC_G does not depend on the choice of the approximation $E_n \to B_n$.

7.2.5 Independence of approximations With another approximation $E'_n \to B'_n$ of the classifying space, we claim that we can form a new sequence of approximations containing both $E'_n \to B'_n$ and $E_n \to B_n$ as final subsets. As preparation, we state two propositions; the first is a simple application of obstruction theory.

Proposition 7.21 *Let $Y \to X$ be a smooth fiber bundle, where the fiber F is k–connected and X is a k–dimensional manifold. Then there is a cross-section for $Y \to X$, and any two cross-sections are homotopic.*

By this proposition, [38, Proposition 1.1.1.] can be modified into the following:

Proposition 7.22 *Let $E \to B$ be a G–principal bundle, with E k–connected. Then, for any closed manifold M with $\dim M \le k$, the G–principal bundles over M are classified by $[M, B]$ (the set of homotopy classes of maps from M to B).*

Therefore by Definition 7.18 and Proposition 7.22, there exists $n_1 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that there is an equivariant map $E_1 \to E'_{n_1}$. Moreover, there exists $m_1 \in \mathbb{N}$ such that there is an equivariant map $E'_{n_1} \to E_{m_1}$ and the composition $E_1 \to E'_{n_1} \to E_{m_1}$ is equivariantly homotopic to $E_1 \subset E_{m_1}$. We can keep applying this argument to get a directed system in the equivariant homotopy category of spaces

$$E_1 \to E'_{n_1} \to E_{m_1} \to E'_{n_2} \to E_{m_2} \to \cdots,$$

which is also compatible with the two approximations $\{E_{m_i}\}$ and $\{E'_{n_i}\}$ up to equivariant homotopy. Then Theorem 7.14 implies that there is a well-defined inverse directed system in the homotopy category of cochain complexes,

$$(7\text{-}3) \quad \cdots \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E_{m_2}) \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E'_{n_2}) \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E_{m_1}) \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E'_{n_1}) \to \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E_1).$$

Let H denote the homotopy limit of (7-3). Since both $\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E'_{n_i})$ and $\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E_{m_i})$ are final in the inverse directed systems above,

$$\operatorname{holim} \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E'_n) = \operatorname{holim} \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E'_{n_i}) = H = \operatorname{holim} \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E_{m_i}) = \operatorname{holim} \mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E_m).$$

Therefore the homotopy type of BC_G is independent of the approximation, giving the following theorem:

Theorem 7.23 *Let $\mathcal{C}$ be an oriented flow category. Assume the compact Lie group G acts on $\mathcal{C}$ and preserves the orientation. Then the homotopy type of the equivariant cochain complex BC_G in Definition 7.20 is well defined, ie independent of all the choices, particularly the choice of the approximation $\{E_n \to B_n\}$.*

7.2.6 Spectral sequences From (7-1), the homotopy limit is the shifted mapping cone of $1 - v$. Thus the action spectral sequence in Proposition 4.1 on $\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E_n)$ induces a spectral sequence on the homotopy limit. In particular, we need to apply the following result:

Proposition 7.24 [75, Exercise 5.4.4] *Let $f : B \to C$ be a map of filtered cochain complexes. For a fixed integer $r \geq 0$, there is a filtration on the mapping cone $C(f)$, defined by*

$$F_p C(f) := F_{p+r} B_{n+1} \oplus F_p C_n.$$

Then the rth page $E_r(C(f))$ of the induced spectral sequence is the mapping cone of the map on the rth page $f^r : E_r(B) \to E_r(C)$.

Let $r = 1$. By Proposition 7.24, there is a spectral sequence for BC_G induced from the action filtration on $\Pi\mathrm{BC}^{\mathcal{C} \times_G E_n}$. Since $E_1^p(\Pi\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{C} \times_G E_n)) = \Pi H^*(C_p \times_G E_n)$ with the differential coming from the d_1 term in (3-15) for each $\mathcal{C} \times_G E_n$, again by Proposition 7.24 $E_1(\mathrm{BC}_G)$ is the (shifted) mapping cone of the cochain morphism

$$1 - v \colon \prod_n \varinjlim_{q \to -\infty} \prod_{p=q}^{\infty} H^*(C_p \times_G E_n) \to \prod_n \varinjlim_{q \to -\infty} \prod_{p=q}^{\infty} H^*(C_p \times_G E_n).$$

Since $\varprojlim^1 H^*(C_p \times_G E_n) = 0$, ie the Mittag-Leffler condition holds for inverse system

$$\cdots \to H^*(C_p \times_G E_n) \to H^*(C_p \times_G E_{n-1}) \to \cdots,$$

the natural map (7-2)

$$\varinjlim_{q \to -\infty} \prod_{p=q}^{\infty} H^*_G(C_p) = \varinjlim_n \varinjlim_{q \to -\infty} \prod_{p=q}^{\infty} H^*(C_p \times_G E_n) \to E_1(\mathrm{BC}_G)$$

is a quasi-isomorphism. The induced differential d_1^G on $\varinjlim_q \prod_{p=q}^{\infty} H^*_G(C_p)$ is the limit of d_1 for $\mathcal{C} \times_G E_n$. Since d_1 comes from the moduli spaces without boundary (the pullback and pushforward on cohomology),

d_1^G is $t_* \circ s^* \colon H_G^*(C_p) \to H_G^*(C_{p+1})$ up to sign (the pullback and pushforward on equivariant cohomology). The polyfold theoretic version of d_1^G is the analog of the equivariant fundamental class in [77].

Corollary 7.25 *There is a spectral sequence for* BC_G *such that*

$$E_2^p(\mathrm{BC}_G) \simeq H^* \left(\varinjlim_{q \to -\infty} \prod_{p=q}^{\infty} H_G^*(C_p), d_1^G \right).$$

8 A basic example: finite-dimensional Morse–Bott cohomology

The aim of this section is to construct a flow category for the finite-dimensional Morse–Bott theory. The existence of such a flow category is a folklore theorem, stated in various places, eg [3; 33]. The Morse version of the flow category was introduced in [19], and [74] provided a detailed construction for the flow category of a Morse function for metrics which are standard near critical points. In this section, we prove that there is a flow category for any Morse–Bott function if we choose a suitable metric. The local analysis in our case is just a family version of the analysis in [74].

In the Morse case, [2, Section 3.4] provides an argument to reduce constructions of continuation maps and homotopies to counting gradient flow lines on some larger manifolds. Similarly, we can construct the flow morphisms and flow homotopies by looking at flow categories arising from some larger manifolds with suitable Morse–Bott functions. With all of these established, just like the Morse case, we can prove that the cohomology of the flow category is independent of the Morse–Bott function. The main theorem of this chapter is the following:

Theorem 8.1 *Let* f *be a Morse–Bott function on a closed manifold* M. *Then there exists a metric* g *such that the compactified moduli spaces of* (*unparametrized*) *gradient flow lines form a flow category with an orientation structure. The cohomology of the flow category is independent of the Morse–Bott function and is equal to the regular cohomology* $H^*(M, \mathbb{R})$.

Let f be a Morse–Bott function on M throughout this section, and let the critical manifolds $C_1, \ldots, C_n$ be such that $f(C_i) < f(C_j)$ if and only if $i < j$. We can fix a real number $\delta > 0$ such that δ is strictly smaller than the absolute values of the nonzero eigenvalues of $\mathrm{Hess}(f)$ over all critical manifolds C_i.

8.1 The Fredholm property for the finite-dimensional Morse–Bott theory

Like the Morse case, the moduli spaces of *parametrized* gradient flow lines from C_i to C_j is a zero set of a Fredholm operator over some Banach space $\mathcal{B}_{i,j}$. The construction of $\mathcal{B}_{i,j}$ was included in the appendix of [32] as part of the Banach manifolds of the cascades construction; we review the construction briefly.

First we fix an auxiliary metric g_0 on M. Let γ be a smooth curve defined over $\mathbb{R}$ such that

(8-1) $$\lim_{t \to -\infty} \gamma(t) = x \in C_i, \qquad \lim_{t \to +\infty} \gamma(t) = y \in C_j,$$

(8-2) $$\left| \frac{\mathrm{d}}{\mathrm{d}t} \gamma \right|_{g_0} < C e^{-\delta|t|} \quad \text{for } |t| \gg 0 \text{ and some constant } C.$$

Let $P(C_i, C_j)$ be the space of continuous paths defined over $\mathbb{R}$ connecting C_i and C_j. The Banach manifold $\mathcal{B}_{i,j}$ will be a subspace of $P(C_i, C_j)$. We will first describe the neighborhood of γ in $\mathcal{B}_{i,j}$. For this purpose:

(1) Fix a smooth function $\chi \colon \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}$ such that $\chi(t) = |t|$ for $|t| \gg 0$. Then we can define the weighted Sobolev space $H^k_\delta(\mathbb{R}, \gamma^* TM)$ with norm $|f|_{H^k_\delta} := |e^{\delta \chi(t)} f|_{H^k}$, for $k \geq 1$.

(2) Fix local charts of M near x and y such that C_i near x is a radius-r ball in the $x_1, \dots, x_{c_i}$ coordinates, and C_j near y is a radius-r ball in the $y_1, \dots, y_{c_j}$ coordinates.

(3) $\rho_\pm(t)$ are smooth functions which are 1 near $\pm\infty$ and 0 near $\mp\infty$ such that (8-3) makes sense using the local charts above.

There exists a positive number K such that when $f \in H^k_\delta(\mathbb{R}, \gamma^* TM)$ with $|f|_{H^k_\delta} < K$, we have that $|f|$ is pointwise smaller than the injective radius of the metric g_0. Let exp denote the exponential map associated to the metric g_0. Then there is a map

(8-3) $$B_K(H^k_\delta(\mathbb{R}, \gamma^* TM)) \times B_r(\mathbb{R}^{c_i}) \times B_r(\mathbb{R}^{c_j}) \to P(C_i, C_j),$$
$$(f, x_1, \dots, x_{c_1}, y_1, \dots, y_{c_j}) \mapsto \exp_\gamma f + \sum_1^{c_i} \rho_- x_i + \sum_1^{c_j} \rho_+ y_i.$$

$\mathcal{B}_{i,j}$ consists of images of all such maps in $P(C_i, C_j)$ for all curves γ satisfying (8-1) and (8-2). Let $\mathcal{E}_{i,j} \to \mathcal{B}_{i,j}$ be the vector bundle, where the fiber over $\gamma \in \mathcal{B}_{i,j}$ is $H^{k-1}_\delta(\mathbb{R}, \gamma^* TM)$.

Proposition 8.2 [32] *$\mathcal{B}_{i,j}$ is a Banach manifold and $\mathcal{E}_{i,j} \to \mathcal{B}_{i,j}$ is a Banach bundle.*

Since the evaluation maps $\mathcal{B}_{i,j} \to C_i \times C_j$ are submersions for all $i < j$, the fiber products $\mathcal{B}_{i,j} \times_j \cdots \times_k \mathcal{B}_{k,l}$ are Banach manifolds. Moreover, $\mathcal{E}_{i_0, i_1} \times_{i_1} \cdots \times_{i_{k-1}} \mathcal{E}_{i_{k-1}, i_k} \to \mathcal{B}_{i_0, i_1} \times_{i_1} \cdots \times_{i_{k-1}} \mathcal{B}_{i_{k-1}, i_k}$ are Banach bundles for all $i_0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_k$. Given a metric g, then there is a section $s_{i,j} \colon \mathcal{B}_{i,j} \to \mathcal{E}_{i,j}$ defined by $s(\gamma) = \gamma' - \nabla_g f(\gamma)$.

Proposition 8.3 [32] *The section $s_{i,j}$ is a Fredholm operator with index $d_j - d_i + c_i + c_j$, where d_i is the dimension of the negative eigenspace of $\mathrm{Hess}(f)$ on C_i (d_i is the grading structure for our flow category).*

Proposition 8.4 *For a generic metric g, $s_{i,j}$ is transverse to 0 and, for all $i_0 < \cdots < i_k$, the fiber products $s_{i_0, i_1}^{-1}(0) \times_{i_1} \cdots \times_{i_{k-1}} s_{i_{k-1}, i_k}^{-1}(0)$ are cut out transversely.*

Proof The proof follows from a standard Sard–Smale argument by considering the universal moduli space of all metrics. The result for the fiber products follows from applying the Sard–Smale argument to $s_{i_0, i_1} \times_{i_1} \cdots \times_{i_{k-1}} s_{i_{k-1}, i_k} \colon \mathcal{B}_{i_0, i_1} \times_{i_1} \cdots \times_{i_{k-1}} \mathcal{B}_{i_{k-1}, i_k} \to \mathcal{E}_{i_0, i_1} \times_{i_1} \cdots \times_{i_{k-1}} \mathcal{E}_{i_{k-1}, i_k}$. $\square$

We call such a pair (f, g) a *Morse–Bott–Smale pair* (this is weaker than the Morse–Bott–Smale condition in Remark 2.17). Let $M_{i,j}$ denote $s_{i,j}^{-1}(0)/\mathbb{R}$. Then $\mathcal{M}_{i,j} := \bigcup_{i < i_1 < \cdots < i_k < j} M_{i,i_1} \times_{i_1} \cdots \times_{i_k} M_{i_k,j}$ can be made into a compact topological space. The topology on this space is completely analogous to the Gromov–Floer topology on the set of broken flow lines in the Morse case; see [2; 74] for details.

8.2 Flow categories of Morse–Bott functions

The main theorem of this section is that we can put smooth structures on $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ such that the following holds:

Theorem 8.5 *The set $\{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$ is a flow category with an orientation structure.*

To prove this theorem, we need to equip $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ with a smooth structure with boundaries and corners. One strategy is using a gluing map [69], which can be generalized to Floer theories. This method requires certain compatibility between gluing maps to guarantee a smooth structure.[27] In the context of Lagrangian Floer theory, such a construction was carried out in [6]. Another method is finding an (M–)polyfold description of the moduli spaces. Then the manifold structures with boundaries and corners come from those of the ambient (M–)polyfolds; see [24; 44]. In this section, we will adopt a more elementary method from [2; 19; 74], so that the smooth structure on the moduli spaces is inherited from some ambient manifolds.

Lemma 8.6 [61] *Let C_i be a critical manifold of the Morse–Bott function f. Then there is a tubular neighborhood of C_i in M diffeomorphic to the normal bundle N of C_i. Moreover, N can be decomposed into stable and unstable bundles N^s and N^u, and there are metrics g^s and g^u on N^s and N^u such that $f(v)|_N = f(C_i) - |v^s|_{g^s}^2 + |v^u|_{g^u}^2$, where $v \in N$, and v^s and v^u are the stable and unstable components of v.*

If we fix a connection on N, then g^s and g^u can be understood as bilinear forms on TN. Let g_{C_i} be a metric on C_i. If a metric g near C_i has the form $\pi^* g_{C_i} + g^s + g^u$, where π is the projection $N \to C_i$, we say the metric g is standard near C_i. In fact, we can require the Morse–Bott–Smale pair to have standard metric near all critical manifolds, as we can obtain transversality by perturbing the metric away from critical manifolds. For a standard metric, the gradient vector in N is contained in the fibers of the tubular neighborhood. Therefore the local picture of the gradient flow is just a family of the Morse flow lines in each fiber. When restricted to a fiber F with coordinate $x_1, \ldots, x_s, y_1, \ldots, y_u$, the pair (f, g) is standard and is in the form

$$f|_F = -x_1^2 - \cdots - x_s^2 + y_1^2 + \cdots + y_u^2 + C,$$

$$g|_F = \mathrm{d}x_1 \otimes \mathrm{d}x_1 + \cdots + \mathrm{d}x_s \otimes \mathrm{d}x_2 + \mathrm{d}y_1 \otimes \mathrm{d}y_1 + \cdots + \mathrm{d}y_u \otimes \mathrm{d}y_u.$$

Inside the fiber F, we define

$$S_s^r := \{(x_1, \ldots, x_s) \mid x_1^2 + \cdots + x_s^2 = r^2\}, \quad S_u^r := \{(y_1, \ldots, y_u) \mid y_1^2 + \cdots + y_u^2 = r^2\},$$

$$D_s^r := \{(x_1, \ldots, x_s) \mid x_1^2 + \cdots + x_s^2 < r^2\}, \quad D_u^r := \{(y_1, \ldots, y_u) \mid y_1^2 + \cdots + y_u^2 < r^2\}.$$

---

[27] One condition that guarantees compatibility is the so-called "associative gluing" [74].

Let $\mathcal{M}$ be the moduli space of gradient flow lines and broken gradient flow lines of $(f|_F, g|_F)$ from $S_s^r \times D_u^r$ to $D_s^r \times S_u^r$. Let ev_- and ev_+ be the two evaluation maps at the two ends defined on $\mathcal{M}$. Then the following lemma is essentially contained in [74]:

Lemma 8.7 *The image* $\text{im}(\text{ev}_- \times \text{ev}_+)(\mathcal{M}) \subset (S_s^r \times D_u^r) \times (D_s^r \times S_u^r)$ *is a submanifold with boundary inside the fiber F.*

Proof The gradient flow lines are $(e^{-2t}x, e^{2t}y)$, and thus the images of unbroken flow lines are $(x, y, (|y|/r)x, (r/|y|)y)$, which is a submanifold in $(S_s^r \times D_u^r) \times (D_s^r \times S_u^r)$. The images of broken flow lines are $(x, 0, 0, y)$, which is also a submanifold in $(S_s^r \times D_u^r) \times (D_s^r \times S_u^r)$. The boundary chart is given by $(t, x, 0, 0, y) \to (x, ty, tx, y)$ for $t \in [0, 1)$; thus the lemma is proven. $\square$

Remark 8.8 Lemma 4.4 of [74] composes the map $\text{ev}_- \times \text{ev}_+$ with the projection $(x, y', x', y) \to ((|x'| + |y'|)/(2r), x, y)$ to get a homeomorphism from $\mathcal{M}$ to $[0, 1) \times S_s^r \times S_u^r$. This was used in [74] to construct a smooth structure with boundaries and corners on $\mathcal{M}$. Since the projection restricted to $\text{im}(\text{ev}_- \times \text{ev}_+)(\mathcal{M})$ is a diffeomorphism, we can also use the smooth structure on $\text{im}(\text{ev}_- \times \text{ev}_+)(\mathcal{M})$ to make $\mathcal{M}$ into a manifold with boundaries and corners.

Since $S_s^r \times D_u^r$ and $D_s^r \times S_u^r$ are transverse to the gradient flow, Lemma 8.7 also holds if we replace $S_s^r \times D_u^r$ and $D_s^r \times S_u^r$ by open sets in $f|_F^{-1}(C - \epsilon)$ and $f|_F^{-1}(C + \epsilon)$. Now we return to the Morse–Bott case with a standard metric near C_i. Let ϕ^t be the flow for ∇f. Then the stable manifold S_i of C_i is defined to be

$$S_i = \left\{ x \in M \mid \lim_{t \to \infty} \phi^t(x) \in C_i \right\},$$

and the unstable manifold U_i is defined to be

$$U_i = \left\{ x \in M \mid \lim_{t \to -\infty} \phi^t(x) \in C_i \right\}.$$

Both S_i and U_i are equipped with smooth evaluation maps to C_i. Then we have the family version of Lemma 8.7 as follows:

Lemma 8.9 *Given a standard metric near C_i, let N_r be the radius-r open tube of C_i. Suppose ϵ is a small positive real number, and $v_i^{\pm\epsilon}$ denotes $f(C_i) \pm \epsilon$. Let $\mathcal{M}_{i,\epsilon,r}$ denote the moduli space of flow lines and broken flow lines from $f^{-1}(v_i^{-\epsilon}) \cap N_r$ to $f^{-1}(v_i^{+\epsilon}) \cap N_r$. Then there exist $\epsilon, r > 0$ such that the image of $\text{ev}_- \times \text{ev}_+|_{\mathcal{M}_{i,\epsilon,r}}$ is a submanifold with boundary in $(f^{-1}(v_i^{-\epsilon}) \cap N_r) \times (f^{-1}(v_i^{+\epsilon}) \cap N_r)$, and the boundary is $(S_i \cap f^{-1}(v_i^{-\epsilon})) \times_{C_i} (U_i \cap f^{-1}(v_i^{+\epsilon}))$.*

Proposition 8.10 $M_{i,j} \times_j M_{j,k} \cup M_{i,k}$ *can be given the structure of a manifold with boundary.*

Proof Since we have diffeomorphisms

$$M_{i,j} \simeq U_i \cap S_j \cap f^{-1}(v_j^{-\epsilon}) \quad \text{and} \quad M_{j,k} \simeq U_j \cap S_k \cap f^{-1}(v_j^{+\epsilon}),$$

the Morse–Bott–Smale condition implies that the intersections are transverse. On the other hand, let $M_{i,k} \cap \mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r}$ be the set of flow lines in $M_{i,k}$ which contains a flow line in $\mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r}$. Then it is an open set of $M_{i,k}$, and we have the embedding

$$\mathrm{ev}_- \times \mathrm{ev}_+ \colon M_{i,k} \cap \mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r} \to (f^{-1}(v_j^{-\epsilon}) \cap N_r) \times (f^{-1}(v_j^{+\epsilon}) \cap N_r).$$

The image is

$$\mathrm{im}(\mathrm{ev}_- \times \mathrm{ev}_+)(M_{i,k} \cap \mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r}) = \mathrm{im}(\mathrm{ev}_- \times \mathrm{ev}_+)(\partial_0 \mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r}) \cap \big((U_i \cap f^{-1}(v_j^{-\epsilon})) \times (S_k \cap f^{-1}(v_j^{+\epsilon}))\big),$$

where $\partial_0 \mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r}$ is the interior (depth-0 boundary, Definition 2.1) of $\mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r}$. The Morse–Bott–Smale condition implies that the intersection is transverse. Moreover, since the fiber product $M_{i,j} \times_j M_{j,k}$ is transverse, $\partial \mathrm{im}(\mathrm{ev}_- \times \mathrm{ev}_+)(\mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r}) = (S_j \cap f^{-1}(v_j^{-\epsilon})) \times_{C_j} (U_j \cap f^{-1}(v_j^{+\epsilon}))$ is also transverse to $(U_i \cap f^{-1}(v_j^{-\epsilon})) \times (S_k \cap f^{-1}(v_j^{+\epsilon}))$. Thus $\mathrm{im}(\mathrm{ev}_- \times \mathrm{ev}_+)(M_{i,k} \cap \mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r})$ can be completed by the boundary structure of $\mathrm{im}(\mathrm{ev}_- \times \mathrm{ev}_+)(\mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r})$. That is, we can add in

$$(U_i \cap S_j \cap f^{-1}(v_j^{-\epsilon})) \times_{C_j} (S_k \cap U_j \cap f^{-1}(v_j^{+\epsilon})) \simeq M_{i,j} \times_j M_{j,k}$$

as the boundary of $M_{i,k} \cap \mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r}$. The topology check is analogous to [74].   □

Therefore we have a smooth boundary structure on $M_{i,j} \times_j M_{j,k} \subset \mathcal{M}_{i,k}$. We still need to construct corner structures near curves with multiple breaking and prove the compatibility of smooth structures. The proof is very similar, and the corner structure will be inherited from (fiber) products of the manifolds with boundary in Lemma 8.9.

Proposition 8.11 $M_{i,j} \times_j M_{j,k} \times_k M_{k,l} \cup M_{i,k} \times_k M_{k,l} \cup M_{i,j} \times_j M_{j,l} \cup M_{i,l}$ *can be given the structure of manifold with boundaries and corners, which is compatible with structure given in* Proposition 8.10.

Proof Let $N_{*,r}$ denote the radius-r open tube around C_*. We use $\mathcal{M}_{j,k,\epsilon,r}$ to denote the moduli space of gradient flow lines from $f^{-1}(v_j^{-\epsilon}) \cap N_{j,r}$ to $f^{-1}(v_k^{+\epsilon}) \cap N_{k,r}$, passing through $f^{-1}(v_j^{+\epsilon}) \cap N_{j,r}$ and $f^{-1}(v_k^{-\epsilon}) \cap N_{k,r}$, such that the only breaking allowed is at C_j or C_k, or both. Then $\mathrm{ev}_{-,+,-,+} := \mathrm{ev}_- \times \mathrm{ev}_+ \times \mathrm{ev}_- \times \mathrm{ev}_+$ defines an embedding

$$\mathcal{M}_{j,k,\epsilon,r} \to (f^{-1}(v_j^{-\epsilon}) \cap N_{j,r}) \times (f^{-1}(v_j^{+\epsilon}) \cap N_{j,r}) \times (f^{-1}(v_k^{-\epsilon}) \cap N_{k,r}) \times (f^{-1}(v_k^{+\epsilon}) \cap N_{k,r}).$$

We define $V \subset f^{-1}(v_j^{+\epsilon}) \cap N_{j,r}, U \subset f^{-1}(v_k^{-\epsilon}) \cap N_{k,r}$ be the sets such that the flow lines from V will end in U without breaking. Then V and U are both open subsets and there is a diffeomorphism $\phi \colon V \to U$ defined using the gradient flow, and so $\mathrm{im}(\mathrm{ev}_{-,+,-,+})$ is contained inside the fiber product $(f^{-1}(v_j^{-\epsilon}) \cap N_{j,r}) \times V \times_\phi U \times (f^{-1}(v_k^{+\epsilon}) \cap N_{k,r})$. By a little abuse of notation, we use $V \cap \mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r}$ to denote $\mathrm{ev}_+^{-1}(V) \subset \mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r}$ and $U \cap \mathcal{M}_{k,\epsilon,r}$ to denote $\mathrm{ev}_-^{-1}(U) \subset \mathcal{M}_{k,\epsilon,r}$, which are both open subsets and inherit the structure of a manifold with boundary from Lemma 8.9. Then $\mathrm{im}(\mathrm{ev}_{-,+,-,+}) = \mathrm{ev}_{-,+}(V \cap \mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r}) \times_\phi \mathrm{ev}_{-,+}(U \cap \mathcal{M}_{k,\epsilon,r})$. The Morse–Bott–Smale condition implies that the fiber product $\mathrm{ev}_{-,+}(V \cap \mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r}) \times_\phi \mathrm{ev}_{-,+}(U \cap \mathcal{M}_{k,\epsilon,r})$ is cut out transversely as a manifold with boundaries

and corners. Therefore $\mathcal{M}_{j,k,\epsilon,r}$ inherits the structure of a manifold with corners from its image under $\mathrm{im}\,\mathrm{ev}_{-,+,-,+}$, whose depth-1 boundary is

$$(\mathrm{ev}_{-,+}(V \cap \partial_1 \mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r}) \times_\phi \mathrm{ev}_{-,+}(U \cap \partial_0 \mathcal{M}_{k,\epsilon,r})) \cup (\mathrm{ev}_{-,+}(V \cap \partial_0 \mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r}) \times_\phi \mathrm{ev}_{-,+}(U \cap \partial_1 \mathcal{M}_{k,\epsilon,r})),$$

and depth-2 boundary (corner) is $\mathrm{ev}_{-,+}(V \cap \partial_1 \mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r}) \times_\phi \mathrm{ev}_{-,+}(U \cap \partial_1 \mathcal{M}_{k,\epsilon,r})$.

We define $M_{i,l} \cap \mathcal{M}_{j,k,\epsilon,r}$ to be the open subset of $M_{i,l}$ consisting of flow lines with a portion in $\mathcal{M}_{j,k,\epsilon,r}$. Similar to the proof of Proposition 8.10, we can use the boundary and corner structures on $\mathcal{M}_{j,k,\epsilon,r}$ to give a corner structure near $M_{i,l} \cap \mathcal{M}_{j,k,\epsilon,r}$ by intersecting the unstable and stable manifolds of C_i and C_l with $\mathrm{im}(\mathrm{ev}_{-,+,-+})$ inside $(f^{-1}(v_j^{-\epsilon}) \cap N_{j,r}) \times (f^{-1}(v_j^{+\epsilon}) \cap N_{j,r}) \times (f^{-1}(v_k^{-\epsilon}) \cap N_{k,r}) \times (f^{-1}(v_k^{+\epsilon}) \cap N_{k,r})$. More explicitly, we get a corner structure near $M_{i,j} \times_j M_{j,k} \times_k M_{k,l}$, which also gives a boundary structure near $M_{i,j} \times_j (M_{j,l} \cap (U \cap \partial_0 \mathcal{M}_{k,\epsilon,r}))$ and $(M_{i,k} \cap (V \cap \partial_0 \mathcal{M}_{j,\epsilon,r})) \times_k M_{k,l}$. Moreover, the boundary structure is exactly the one constructed in Proposition 8.10. This finishes the proof. $\qquad\square$

Proof of Theorem 8.5 Following the same proof as that of Proposition 8.11, we can prove that $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ is endowed with the structure of compact manifold with boundaries and corners. Let o_i be the determinant line bundle of the stable bundle N^s over C_i. Then $\{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$ defines a flow category $\mathcal{C}_{f,g}$ with an orientation structure following the construction in Section 5.1.2. $\qquad\square$

8.3 Morphisms and homotopies

To derive the flow morphisms between different Morse–Bott functions and flow homotopies between them, we will use the argument from [2] to reduce the construction of flow morphisms and flow homotopies back to flow categories.

8.3.1 Flow morphisms [2, Theorem 3.4.2, first step] Let (f_1, g_1) and (f_2, g_2) be two locally standard Morse–Bott–Smale pairs, and let $\mathcal{C}^1 = \{C_i^1, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}^1\}$ and $\mathcal{C}^2 = \{C_i^2, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}^2\}$ denote the associated flow categories. We can find a smooth function $F \colon \mathbb{R} \times M \to \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$F(t, x) = \begin{cases} f_1(x) & \text{if } t < \frac{1}{3}, \\ f_2(x) & \text{if } t > \frac{2}{3}. \end{cases}$$

We consider a Morse function h on $\mathbb{R}$ that only has two critical points: one local minimum at 0 and one local maximum at 1. Also, h satisfies

$$\frac{\partial F}{\partial t} + \frac{dh}{dt} > 0 \quad \text{for all } x \in M \text{ and } t \in (0, 1).$$

Then $F + h$ defines a Morse–Bott function on $\mathbb{R} \times M$ with critical manifolds $\{C_i^1 \times \{0\}\}$ and $\{C_i^2 \times \{1\}\}$. We can find a locally standard metric G such that

$$G(t, x) = \begin{cases} g_1 + dt \otimes dt & \text{if } t < \frac{1}{3}, \\ g_2 + dt \otimes dt & \text{if } t > \frac{2}{3}. \end{cases}$$

We can assume (F, G) is a locally standard Morse–Bott–Smale pair. Then by Theorem 8.5, we can associate to $(F + h, G)$ a flow category with an orientation structure. Let $\mathcal{F}_{i,j}$ dquadenote the compactified

moduli space of flow lines from $C_i^1 \times \{0\}$ to $C_j^2 \times \{1\}$. Then $\mathcal{F}_{i,j}$ forms a flow morphism $\mathfrak{F}$ from $\mathcal{C}^1$ to $\mathcal{C}^2$. When $F(t,x) = f(x)$, we can choose metric $g + dt^2$. Then $F_{i,i} = C_i$ and $F_{i,j} \simeq \mathcal{M}_{i,j} \times [0, j-i] \simeq I_{i,j}$ for $i < j$, that is, the construction gives the identity flow morphism [2, Theorem 3.4.2. second step].

8.3.2 Flow homotopies [2, Theorem 3.4.2, third step] Assume we have continuations F, G and H from f_1 to f_2, f_2 to f_3 and f_1 to f_3, respectively. Then we can find $K : \mathbb{R}_s \times \mathbb{R}_t \times M \to \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$K(s,t,x) = \begin{cases} H(t,x) & \text{if } s < \frac{1}{3}, \\ F(s,x) & \text{if } t < \frac{1}{3}, \\ G(t,x) & \text{if } s > \frac{2}{3}, \\ f_3(x) & \text{if } t > \frac{2}{3}. \end{cases}$$

We can find h with one local minimum at 0 and local maximum at 1 such that

$$\frac{\partial K}{\partial s} + h'(s) > 0 \quad \forall (s,t,x) \in (0,1) \times \mathbb{R} \times M \qquad \text{and} \qquad \frac{\partial K}{\partial t} + h'(t) > 0 \quad \forall (s,t,x) \in \mathbb{R} \times (0,1) \times M.$$

Then $K + h(s) + h(t)$ defines a Morse–Bott function, with critical manifolds $\{C_i^1 \times \{(0,0)\}\}$, $\{C_i^2 \times \{(1,0)\}\}$, $\{C_i^3 \times \{(0,1)\}\}$ and $\{C_i^3 \times \{(1,1)\}\}$, and we can find a locally standard Morse–Bott–Smale metric extending the locally standard metrics used in F, G, H and f_3. Then the flow lines from $C_i^1 \times \{(0,0)\}$ to $C_j^3 \times \{(1,1)\}$ give rise to a flow homotopy between $\mathfrak{G} \circ \mathfrak{F}$ and $\mathfrak{I} \circ \mathfrak{H}$.

Proof of Theorem 8.1 By Theorem 8.5, we have a flow category $\mathcal{C}_{f,g}$ with an orientation structure for any locally standard Morse–Bott–Smale pair (f,g). Using the flow morphisms and flow homotopies above, we can see that the cohomology of $\mathcal{C}_{f,g}$ does not depend on (f,g). Thus we can let $f \equiv C$, and g be any metric. Then (f,g) is a locally standard Morse–Bott–Smale pair. The object space and morphism space of the corresponding flow category are both M; thus the cohomology of the flow category equals the cohomology $H^*(M, \mathbb{R})$. $\square$

A Morse–Smale pair is a special case of a Morse–Bott–Smale pair, and our definition of the minimal Morse–Bott cochain complex recovers the Morse cochain complex when the function is Morse. As a corollary, the $\mathbb{R}$ coefficient Morse cohomology equals the de Rham cohomology of M.

8.4 Noncompact case

Let M be a noncompact manifold of finite type, as introduced in Definition 6.1, throughout this subsection. That is, M is the set of interior points of a compact manifold with nonempty boundary. Let ∂_r be a nonzero outward-pointing vector field on the collar neighborhood of the end of M. In the following, we will only consider two types of Morse–Bott functions:

(1) Morse–Bott functions f such that $\partial_r f > 0$ on the collar,

(2) constant functions.

In (1), we have a flow category $\mathcal{C}_f$ by Theorem 8.5. In (2), the flow category is a single space M, which is a proper flow category. Next we will show how to associate a flow morphism between flow categories from different Morse–Bott functions and flow homotopy between them. Once they are set up like the

compact case, we have that the cohomology of the flow category is independent of the Morse–Bott function. In particular, one can choose a constant, and hence the cohomology is the regular cohomology.

8.4.1 Flow morphisms and homotopies Given two admissible Morse–Bott functions f_1 and f_2 on M, the homotopy between them is a smooth function $F : \mathbb{R} \times M \to \mathbb{R}$ such that

$$F(t, x) = \begin{cases} f_1(x) & \text{if } t < \frac{1}{3}, \\ f_2(x) & \text{if } t > \frac{2}{3}, \end{cases}$$

and when $t \in \left(\frac{1}{3}, \frac{2}{3}\right)$, we have $\partial_r F(t, x) > 0$ on the collar. Then $h + F$ defines a Morse–Bott function on $\mathbb{R} \times M$, and we claim that the associated flow category defines a proper flow morphism from $\mathcal{C}_{f_1}$ to $\mathcal{C}_{f_2}$. We may assume the metric on $\mathbb{R} \times M$ has the property that the gradient for the collar coordinate $r \in (-1, 0)$ is ∂_r on the collar. Then $\partial_r F(t, x) \geq 0$ for all t implies that $\partial_r F(t, x) = \partial_r (h + F(t, x)) = \langle \nabla r, \nabla(h + F(t, x)) \rangle \geq 0$. Therefore any gradient flow line from a critical point of f_1 to a critical point f_2 has the property that if it touches the collar then it stays in the collar after the touching point. In addition to the argument in Section 8.3, we need to show the properness of the target maps in order to prove the claim. We divide it into the following cases.

(i) **Both f_1 and f_2 are of type (1)** Any gradient flow line that touches the collar neighborhood cannot return to the interior side. Hence the construction in Section 8.3 gives compact moduli spaces and a flow morphism from $\mathcal{C}_{f_1}$ to $\mathcal{C}_{f_2}$.

(ii) **f_1 is of type (2) and f_2 is of type (1)** The same argument as in case (i) holds.

(iii) **f_1 is of type (1) and f_2 is of type (2)** Let $K \subset M = \mathrm{Crit}(f_2)$ be a compact subset. For points outside the collar, we define $r = -1$. Let $R := \max\{r(x) \mid x \in K\}$. Then $R < 0$ and all gradient flow lines from critical points of f_1 to a point in K stay inside the domain $[0, 1] \times \{r \leq R\}$, and hence the space of such flow lines is compact. This shows that the target maps are proper.

(iv) **Both f_1 and f_2 are of type (2)** The same argument as in case (iii) holds.

Remark 8.12 If we replace the condition on the collar by $\partial_r F(t, x) < 0$, this would force f_1 and f_2 to have the property that $\partial_r f_1, \partial_r f_2 < 0$ if they are not constant. In this case, the gradient flow lines in $\mathbb{R} \times M$ will shrink on the collar neighborhood instead of expanding, and hence the source map is proper and the target map is not. We can similarly define a cochain complex using the compactly supported cohomology in this case. The cohomology of the cochain complex is the compactly supported cohomology, which is isomorphic to the homology.

The asymmetry of the flow morphism prevents us from constructing a flow morphism from $\mathcal{C}_f$ to $\mathcal{C}_f$. Assume $f > 0$ without loss of generality. There exists a flow morphism from $\mathcal{C}_f$ to $\mathcal{C}_{2f}$ constructed from $F(t, x) = \phi(t) f(x)$, where $\phi(t)$ is an increasing function with $\phi(t) = 1$ for $t \leq 0$ and $\phi(t) = 2$ for $t \geq 1$. The flow morphism is diffeomorphic to the identity flow morphism when we use the metric $g + dt^2$. The flow homotopy follows from the same argument as if we require the increasing property on the collar

when constructing the homotopy of homotopy. Therefore we have the invariance of the cohomology with respect to the Morse–Bott function:

Theorem 8.13 *If M is a noncompact manifold of finite type and f is a Morse–Bott function of type* (1) *or* (2), *then the flow category $\mathcal{C}_f$ is proper and has a local system such that the cohomology is $H^*(M; \mathbb{R})$.*

8.4.2 The Gysin exact sequence Let M be an n–dimensional manifold of finite type. Assume f is a Morse–Bott function on M and, when M is noncompact, f is one of the two admissible types (1) or (2). Let g be a metric such that (f, g) is a locally standard Morse–Bott–Smale pair. Then we have a (proper) flow category $\mathcal{C}_f = \{C_i, \mathcal{M}_{i,j}\}$. Let $\pi\colon E \to M$ be a oriented k–sphere bundle. Then $\pi^* f$ is a Morse–Bott function on E with critical manifolds $\{\pi^{-1}(C_i)\}$. We pick a metric g_F on the fibers of E, (a metric only defined on the subbundle of fiber directions $T^v E$ of TE). Fix a connection of $TE = T^v E \oplus T^h E$. Then g_F can be understood as a semipositive bilinear form on TE vanishing on $T^h E$, and $g_F + \pi^* g$ is a metric on E. It can be verified directly that a gradient flow line $\tilde{\gamma}$ of $(\pi^* f, g_F + \pi_* g)$ is a parallel lift of a gradient flow line γ of (f, g). Hence $(\pi^* f, g_F + \pi_* g)$ is again a Morse–Bott–Smale pair, and the induced flow category $\mathcal{C}_{\pi^* f}$ is given by

$$\mathrm{Obj}(\mathcal{C}_{\pi^* f}) = \{E_i := \pi^{-1}(C_i)\} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathrm{Mor}(\mathcal{C}_{\pi^* f}) = \{\mathcal{M}^E_{i,j} = s^*_{i,j} E_i\}.$$

The source map is the natural map and the target map is given by the parallel transportation along flow lines in $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$. As a consequence, we have an oriented k–sphere bundle $\mathcal{C}_{\pi^* f} \to \mathcal{C}_f$. The flow morphisms and flow homotopies defined in the previous discussions can be lifted to the sphere bundle level by the same parallel transportation construction. Therefore the induced Gysin exact sequence is independent of the function f. In particular, one may choose f to be constant, and hence the Gysin exact sequence will become the usual Gysin exact sequence by Proposition 6.24. Therefore we have the following isomorphism of long exact sequences:

Theorem 8.14 *Let M be an n–dimensional manifold of finite type and $\pi\colon E \to M$ a k–sphere bundle. Suppose f is an admissible Morse–Bott function on M. Then we have the following isomorphic long exact sequences*:

$$
\begin{array}{ccccccccc}
\cdots & \longrightarrow & H^i(\mathcal{C}_f) & \longrightarrow & H^i(\mathcal{C}_{\pi^* f}) & \longrightarrow & H^{i-k}(\mathcal{C}_f) & \longrightarrow & H^{i+1}(\mathcal{C}_f) & \longrightarrow & \cdots \\
 & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \downarrow & & \\
\cdots & \longrightarrow & H^i(M) & \xrightarrow{\pi^*} & H^i(E) & \xrightarrow{\pi_*} & H^{i-k}M & \xrightarrow{\wedge(-1)^{\dim C+1}e} & H^{i+1}(M) & \longrightarrow & \cdots
\end{array}
$$

9 Transversality by polyfold theory

With the theory on flow categories developed in the previous sections, we now want to get flow categories in applications, ie we need to solve the transversality problems. For this purpose, we will adopt the

polyfold theory developed by Hofer, Wysocki and Zehnder [40; 42; 43; 41; 44]. This section outlines some ideas on combining our construction with polyfold theory; details will appear in a future work.

9.1 Polyflow categories

The main result of Section 3 is that, for any oriented flow category, we can construct a well-defined cochain complex up to homotopy. If we want to write down a representative cochain complex of the homotopy class, we need to fix defining data Θ. In applications, take Hamiltonian Floer cohomology as an example, the flow category consists of the zero sets of some sc–Fredholm sections over a family of polyfolds [73]. A natural idea is that we replace every manifold $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ in the flow category by strong polyfold bundle $W_{i,j} \to Z_{i,j}$ with an sc–Fredholm section $\kappa_{i,j}$ such that all $W_{i,j} \to Z_{i,j}, \kappa_{i,j}$ are organized just like a flow category. When all $\kappa_{i,j}$ are transverse to 0, then $\kappa_{i,j}^{-1}(0)$ defines a flow category. In this case, we expect to assign a well-defined cochain complex to such a system of polyfolds up to homotopy. When we need to write down an explicit representative cochain complex for the homotopy class, we need to fix a family of perturbations that are compatible with category structure and defining data (on C_i), which does not depend on the perturbation. We first give a preliminary definition of such a system:

Definition 9.1 A *polyflow category* is a small category $\mathcal{Z}$ with following properties:

(1)   The object space $\mathrm{Obj}(\mathcal{Z}) = C := \bigsqcup_{i \in \mathbb{Z}} C_i$ is the disjoint union of manifolds C_i such that each connected component of C_i is a manifold of finite type (Definition 6.1).

(2)   The morphism space $\mathrm{Mor}(\mathcal{Z}) = Z$ is a polyfold. The source and target maps $s, t \colon Z \to C$ are sc–smooth. Let $Z_{i,j}$ denote $(s \times t)^{-1}(C_i \times C_j)$.

(3) $Z_{i,i} \simeq C_i$ (the identity morphisms), $Z_{i,j} = \varnothing$ for $j < i$, and $Z_{i,j}$ is a polyfold for $j > i$.

(4)   The fiber product $Z_{i_0,i_1} \times_{i_1} Z_{i_1,i_2} \times_{i_2} \cdots \times_{i_{k-1}} Z_{i_{k-1},i_k}$ is cut transversely, for all increasing sequences $i_0 < i_1 < \cdots < i_k$.

(5)   The composition $m \colon Z_{i,j} \times_j Z_{j,k} \to Z_{i,k}$ is an sc–smooth injective map into the boundary of $Z_{i,k}$. Moreover, $\partial Z_{j,k} = \bigcup_{i<j<k} m(Z_{i,j} \times_j Z_{j,k})$ and $d(x) + d(y) + 1 = d(m(x,y))$ for $(x,y) \in Z_{i,j} \times_j Z_{j,k}$, where d is the degeneracy index [44, Definition 2.4.1]. When restricted to any stratum of fixed degeneracy index, m is a local sc–diffeomorphism to a stratum with a fixed degeneracy index.

(6)   There are strong polyfold bundles $W_{i,j} \to Z_{i,j}$ and sc–Fredholm sections $\kappa_{i,j}$ such that both bundles and sections are compatible with m, ie $m^* W_{i,k}|_{Z_{i,j} \times_j Z_{j,k}} = W_{i,j} \times W_{j,k}$ and $\kappa_{i,k}|_{m(Z_{i,j} \times_j Z_{j,k})} = m(s_{i,j}, s_{j,k})$.

(7) $\kappa_{i,j}^{-1}(0) \cap t_{i,j}^{-1}(K)$ is compact for every compact set $K \cap C_j$.

Remark 9.2 (i)   Condition (4) can be replaced by the more convenient condition that the $(s \times t)|_{Z_{i,j}}$ are submersions. Then (4) follows from [25].

(ii)   The index ind $s_{i,j}$ plays the role of $m_{i,j}$. Orientation structures defined in Section 5 can be generalized to polyflow categories such that orientation structures are enough to give coherent orientations or local systems on flow categories from perturbations in Claim 9.3.

(iii)   Condition (5) is stronger than Definition 2.9(4). When we define operators from a flow category, we use integration and Stokes' theorem. Hence an almost identification on the boundary is enough. However, in the polyflow category, we need to perturb $Z_{i,j}$ inductively in a coherent way, which requires a finer identification of all the boundary and corner structures.

When all sections $\kappa_{i,j}$ are transverse to 0, the zero sets form a proper flow category. Hence our goal is to find a family of sc$^+$–perturbations $\tau_{i,j}$ such that $s_{i,j} + \tau_{i,j}$ is transverse in general position and consistent with the composition m. The consistency depends on the combinatorics of the problem in general. In the case of polyflow categories, the combinatorics are relatively simple and we expect to have a perturbation scheme.

Claim 9.3   *There exist coherent perturbations $\tau_{i,j}$ such that $\kappa_{i,j} + \tau_{i,j}$ is transverse to 0 and in general position* [44, Definition 5.3.9].

Remark 9.4   The claim does not hold when there are inner symmetries that we want to preserve. To be more precise, assume we have a strong polyfold bundle $W \to Z$ with two submersive evaluation maps $s, t: Z \to C$. Let $\kappa: Z \to W$ be a Fredholm section. When $\dim C > 0$, given any transverse perturbation $\tau: Z \to W$, it is not necessarily true that (τ, τ) is a transverse perturbation to (κ, κ) on the fiber product $Z_t \times_s Z$. In fact, it is possible that there is no transverse perturbation to (κ, κ) on $Z_t \times_s Z$ in the form of (τ, τ) for a perturbation $\tau: Z \to W$. Such phenomena can appear in a polyflow category, eg we may have $C_i = C_j = C_k$, $W_{i,j} = W_{j,k}$ and $\kappa_{i,j} = \kappa_{j,k}$. If we require $\tau_{i,j} = \tau_{j,k}$, then we run into this problem. In applications, for example Hamiltonian Floer cohomology, we see this when the Novikov coefficient has to be used. The requirement of symmetry in perturbations guarantees the cochain complex is a module over the Novikov field. In the S^1–Morse theory case, this also causes problems (self-gluing) in the homotopy argument. The homotopy argument can be viewed as a Morse–Bott problem with critical manifolds copies of $\mathbb{R}$. In these two explicit examples, special methods can be adopted to overcome the challenge. In the most general case, under certain assumptions[28] of the polyflow category, we can actually perturb the source and target maps consistently to destroy all the inner symmetries. We will discuss this in detail in our future work.

Although the polyfold perturbation only produces weighted branched suborbifolds as the transverse zero sets, it causes no problem, since the convergence results (Lemmas 3.7 and 3.14), are local in nature. The only thing we need about $\mathcal{M}_{i,j}$ is Stokes' theorem, which was proven in [43]. Thus all the proofs

---

[28]Basically, we require a collar neighborhood near the boundaries and corners of polyfolds. Such assumptions are satisfied in all known examples.

in Section 3 apply to the weighted branched suborbifold case. Similar to Definition 9.1, we can define polyflow morphisms and polyflow homotopies by replacing the manifolds by polyfolds with sc–Fredholm sections. Once the perturbation scheme is given for those structures, we can generate flow morphisms and flow homotopies.

Remark 9.5 To generalize the identity flow category (Definition/Lemma 3.23) to the polyfold case, the naive construction of multiplying by an interval does not work, because the product with an interval does not have the right boundary and corner structures to apply an inductive perturbation scheme. However, there is a more natural construction of the identity (poly)flow category which has the right boundary and corner structures. The construction is closely related to the geometric realization of the category, which will be discussed in a future work.

The enrichment to polyflow categories causes more choices, ie the choice of perturbation. We would like to have the cohomology independent of the perturbation. Such invariance can be proven using the identity polyflow category or a homotopy argument.

Claim 9.6 *Let $\mathcal{Z}$ be a polyflow category with orientation structures. If there is no inner symmetry,[29] then we can associate it with a Morse–Bott cochain complex $(\mathrm{BC}(\mathcal{Z}), d_{\mathrm{BC}})$ such that the homotopy type of the cochain complex is independent of defining data and sc^+–perturbations.*

9.2 Equivariant theory

In Section 7, we discuss the equivariant theory when the flow category is equipped with a group action. However, requiring G symmetry on the flow category is equivalent to requiring G–equivariant transversality on the background polyflow category. Since G–equivariant transversality is often obstructed, the construction in Section 7 cannot be applied directly. However, the construction in Section 7 can be generalized to polyflow categories. Hence we can apply the Borel construction on the level of polyfolds.

Definition 9.7 Let $\mathcal{Z}$ be a polyflow category. A compact Lie group G acts on $\mathcal{Z}$ if and only if G acts on C_i and $W_{i,j} \to Z_{i,j}$ in the sense of [78, Definition 3.66] so that all sc–Fredholm sections $\kappa_{i,j}$ and the structure maps s, t and m are G–equivariant.

Assume G acts a polyflow category $\mathcal{Z}$. If we fix an approximation E_n of EG, then we can form a sequence of polyflow categories $\mathcal{Z} \times_G E_n$ by the quotient construction in [78]. Using the identity polyflow morphism and the construction in Section 7, we have a sequence of polyflow morphisms connecting different $\mathcal{Z} \times_G E_n$. Then we have a directed system in the "category" of polyflow categories. We can get an inverse system of cochain complexes by applying Claim 9.6. Then the equivariant cochain complex will be the homotopy limit of such an inverse system. Details of the construction will appear in a future work.

---

[29]Or collar neighborhood assumptions on the polyfolds hold, if there are inner symmetries.

Appendix A   Convergence

This section proves the convergence results used in Section 3. We will see that transversality of fiber products is not only natural from the polyfold point of view as explained in Section 9, but also essential in proving the convergence results, especially Lemma 3.14.

A.1   The Thom class

We review the construction of Thom classes in [11, Section 6]. Let $\pi\colon E \to M$ be an oriented vector bundle with a metric over an oriented manifold. The fiber F, the base manifold M and the total space E are oriented in the manner of $[M][F] = [E]$. If $S(E)$ denotes the sphere bundle of E, then we can find a form ψ (an angular form) on $S(E)$ such that the integration over each fiber is 1, and $\mathrm{d}\psi = -\pi^* e$, where e is the Euler class of the sphere bundle. Then we pick smooth functions $\rho_n\colon \mathbb{R}^+ \to \mathbb{R}$ such that ρ_n is increasing, supported in $[0, 1/n]$ and is -1 near 0; see Figure 4.

Then $\mathrm{d}(\rho_n \psi)$ defines a form on $\mathbb{R}^+ \times S(E)$, and it is $\pi^* e$ on an open neighborhood of $\{0\} \times S(E)$. Thus $\mathrm{d}(\rho_n \psi)$ is a lift of some form on E, that is, $\mathrm{d}(\rho_n \psi) = p^* \delta^n$ for $\delta^n \in \Omega^*(E)$, where p is the natural map $\mathbb{R}^+ \times S(E) \to E$. This δ^n is a Thom class of $\pi\colon E \to M$. The next lemma asserts that δ^n actually represent the zero section not only in the cohomological sense, but also in a stronger sense of currents. Let δ_M denote the Dirac current of the zero section: $\delta_M(\alpha) = \int_M i^* \alpha$ for $\alpha \in \Omega^*(E)$, where $i\colon M \to E$ is the zero section.

Lemma A.1 (Lemma 3.1)   *We have $\delta^n \to \delta_M$ in the sense of currents, ie for all $\alpha \in \Omega^*(E)$,*

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \int_E \alpha \wedge \delta^n \to \delta_M(\alpha).$$

Proof   Let $F \simeq \mathbb{R}^n$ be a fiber of the bundle. Since δ^n is compactly supported, the integration over a fiber is

$$\int_F \delta^n = \int_{F-\{0\}} \delta^n = \int_{(0,\infty)\times S^{n-1}} p^* \delta^n = \int_{[0,\infty)\times S^{n-1}} p^* \delta^n = \int_{[0,\infty)\times S^{n-1}} \mathrm{d}(\rho_n \psi) = -\int_{\{0\}\times S^{n-1}} \psi = 1.$$
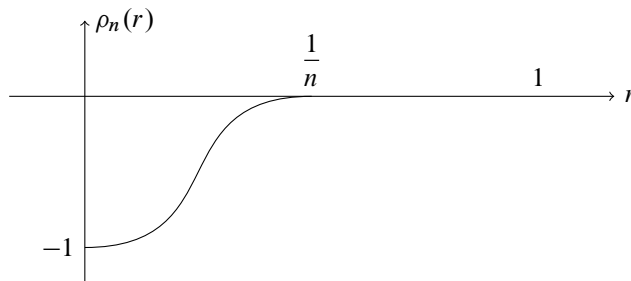
Figure 4: The graph of ρ_n.

Let $\alpha \in \Omega^*(E)$. Since $\int_F \delta^n = 1$ for any fiber F,

$$\int_E \pi^* i^* \alpha \wedge \delta^n = \int_M \int_F \pi^* i^* \alpha \wedge \delta^n = \int_M i^* \alpha.$$

Therefore, it is enough to show

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \int_E (\alpha - \pi^* i^* \alpha) \wedge \delta^n = 0.$$

We will prove this by partition of unity. Let $\{U_i\}$ be an open cover of M and $\{p_i\}$ a partition of unity subordinated to this open cover. We fix trivializations over each U_i. Then over $\pi^{-1}(U_i)$,

$$(\pi^* p_i) \cdot (\alpha - \pi^* i^* \alpha) = \sum f^{I,J} \mathrm{d}x^I \wedge \mathrm{d}y^J,$$

where x are the coordinates in U_i and y are the coordinates in the fiber direction. I and J are sets of indices. Since α and $\pi^* i^* \alpha$ are the same when restricted to the zero section, $\lim_{r \to 0} f^{I,\varnothing} = 0$, where r is the radius coordinate in the fiber direction. Hence

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \int_{\pi^{-1}(U_i)} f^{I,\varnothing} \mathrm{d}x^I \wedge \delta^n = \lim_{n \to \infty} \int_{\mathbb{R}^+ \times S^{n-1} \times U_i} f^{I,\varnothing} \mathrm{d}x^I \wedge \mathrm{d}\rho_n \wedge \psi - f^{I,\varnothing} \mathrm{d}x^I \wedge \rho_n \pi^* e$$

$$= \lim_{n \to \infty} \int_0^{1/n} \int_{S(E)|_{U_i}} \pm f^{I,\varnothing} \mathrm{d}\rho_n \wedge \psi \wedge \mathrm{d}x^I \pm \rho_n f^{I,\varnothing} \pi^* e \wedge \mathrm{d}x^I.$$

Since $|\rho_n|$ is supported in $[0, 1/n]$ and bounded by 1, $\int_0^{1/n} |\mathrm{d}\rho_n| = 1$, $\lim_{r \to 0} f^{I,\varnothing} = 0$ and ψ is bounded on $S(E)$, we have

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \int_{\pi^{-1}(U)} f^{I,\varnothing} \mathrm{d}x^I \wedge \delta^n = 0.$$

When the cardinality $|J|$ of J is greater than 0, using the spherical coordinate in the fiber direction, $\mathrm{d}y^I = C r^{|J|} \mathrm{d}\theta^J + D r^{|J|-1} \mathrm{d}r \wedge \mathrm{d}\theta^{J-1}$, where $\mathrm{d}\theta^J$ and $\mathrm{d}\theta^{J-1}$ are forms on the sphere of degree $|J|$ and $|J| - 1$ and C, D are bounded functions. Because $\mathrm{d}\rho_n$ is purely in the $\mathrm{d}r$ direction,

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \int_{\pi^{-1}(U_i)} f^{I,J} \mathrm{d}x^I \wedge \mathrm{d}y^J \wedge \delta^n$$

$$= \lim_{n \to \infty} \int_0^{1/n} \int_{S(E)|_{U_i}} f^{I,J} C r^{|J|} \mathrm{d}x^I \wedge \mathrm{d}\theta^J \wedge \mathrm{d}\rho_n \wedge \psi$$

(A-1) $$\qquad - \lim_{n \to \infty} \int_0^{1/n} \int_{S(E)|_{U_i}} f^{I,J} C r^{|J|} \psi \wedge \mathrm{d}x^I \wedge \mathrm{d}\theta^J \wedge \rho_n \pi^* e$$

(A-2) $$\qquad - \lim_{n \to \infty} \int_0^{1/n} \int_{S(E)|_{U_i}} f^{I,J} D r^{|J|-1} \wedge \psi \wedge \mathrm{d}x^I \wedge \mathrm{d}r \wedge \mathrm{d}\theta^{J-1} \wedge \rho_n \pi^* e.$$

Because $f^{I,J}$ and C are bounded, $\mathrm{d}\theta^J$ is bounded on $S(E)$, $\int_0^{1/n} |\mathrm{d}\rho_n| = 1$ and $\lim_{r \to 0} r^{|J|} = 0$, the first term limits to zero. Since everything in (A-1) and (A-2) is uniformly bounded and ρ_n is supported in $[0, 1/n]$, (A-1) and (A-2) have limit zero. Hence

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \int_{\pi^{-1}(U_i)} \pi^* p_i (\alpha_i - \pi^* i^* \alpha) \wedge \delta^n = 0.$$

Therefore

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \int_E (\alpha_i - \pi^* i^* \alpha) \wedge \delta^n = \lim_{n \to \infty} \sum_i \int_{\pi^{-1}(U_i)} (\pi^* p_i) \cdot (\alpha_i - \pi^* i^* \alpha) \wedge \delta^n = 0. \qquad \square$$
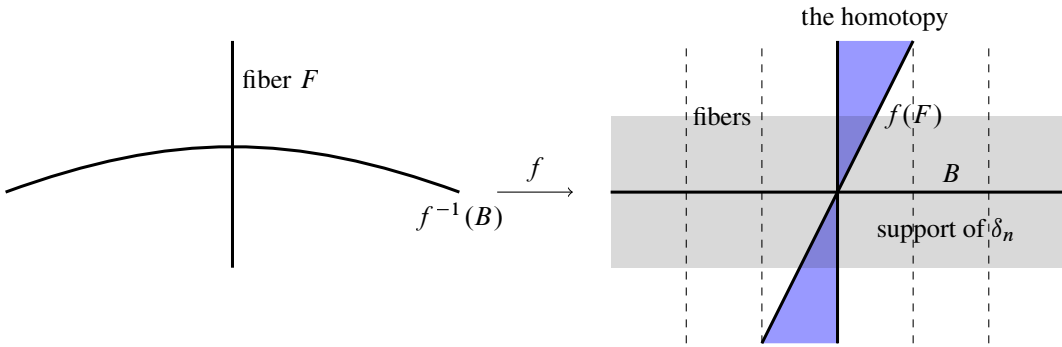
Figure 5: The pullback of Thom classes.

Next we will show that Lemma A.1 is preserved under pullback, when transversality conditions are met.

Lemma A.2 Let M be a compact manifold with boundaries and corners and $E \to B$ a vector bundle over a **closed** manifold B. If $f : M \to E$ is transverse to B and we orient $f^{-1}(B)$ by $[f^{-1}(B)]f^*[E] = [TM|_{f^{-1}(B)}]$, then for $\alpha \in \Omega^*(C)$,

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \int_M \alpha \wedge f^* \delta^n = \int_{f^{-1}(B)} \alpha|_{f^{-1}(B)}.$$

Proof Fix a tubular neighborhood $\pi : N \to f^{-1}(B)$. For n big enough, $f^*\delta^n$ is the Thom class of $f^{-1}(B)$, ie $f^*\delta^n$ has integration 1 along each fiber. This is because the fiber F of $f^{-1}(B)$ is diffeomorphic to a submanifold homotopic to a fiber of $E \to B$ though the map f. Since δ^n is closed and has a small enough support, Stokes' theorem implies $\int_F f^*\delta_n = \int_{f(F)} \delta^n = \int_{\text{fiber of } E} \delta^n = 1$. Then by the same argument as in the proof of Lemma A.1, we only need to prove

$$\lim_{n \to \infty} \int_N (\alpha - \pi^* i^* \alpha) \wedge f^* \delta^n = 0.$$

Picking a point $x \in f^{-1}(B)$, by the implicit function theorem, we can find a local chart of x in M,

$$\phi : \mathbb{R}_+^k \times \mathbb{R}^n \to M, \quad \phi(0) = x,$$

and local trivialization of $E \to B$ over $f(x)$,

$$\psi : \mathbb{R}^i \times \mathbb{R}^j \to E, \quad \psi(0,0) = (f(x), 0),$$

such that

$$\psi^{-1} \circ f \circ \phi(x_1, \ldots, x_k, y_1, \ldots, y_{n-j}, z_{n-j+1}, \ldots, z_n) = (f_1, \ldots, f_i, z_{n-j+1}, \ldots, z_n),$$

where $f_1, \ldots, f_i$ are functions of x_*, y_* and z_*. Replacing the z coordinates by spherical coordinates, the pullback of $d(\rho_n \psi)$ through f is $d(\rho_n \tilde{\psi})$, where $\tilde{\psi}$ is defined on $\mathbb{R}_+^k \times \mathbb{R}^{n-j} \times S^{j-1} \times \mathbb{R}_+$ and uniformly bounded. Then the proof of Lemma A.1 can be applied to prove the claim. $\square$

A.2 Proof of Lemmas 3.7 and 3.14

Following the discussion in Section 3.1, we pick representatives $\{\theta_{i,a}\}$ of a basis of $H^*(C_i)$ in $\Omega^*(C_i)$ to get a quasi-isomorphic embedding

$$H^*(C_i) \to \Omega^*(C_i),$$

and denote the dual basis by $\{\theta_{i,a}^*\}$ such that $\{\theta_{i,a}^*\}$ are in the image of the chosen embedding $H^*(C_i) \to \Omega^*(C_i)$ and $(-1)^{\dim C_i |\theta_i^b|} \int_{C_i} \theta_{i,a}^* \wedge \theta_{i,b} = \delta_{ab}$. Then by Proposition 3.2, the Thom class $\delta_i^n = \mathrm{d}(\rho_n \psi_i)$ of $\Delta_i \subset C_i \times C_i$ and $\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^*$ both represent the Poincaré dual of the diagonal Δ_i, thus they are cohomologous in $\Omega^*(C_i \times C_i)$. Therefore we can find f_i^n such that $\mathrm{d} f_i^n = \delta_i^n - \sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_{i,a} \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_{i,a}^*$ and

(A-3) $$f_i^n - f_i^m = (\rho_n - \rho_m)\psi_i.$$

Thus the support of $f_i^n - f_i^m$ converges to a measure-zero set. To show the convergence results (Lemmas 3.7 and 3.14), we need to show that f_i^n is uniformly bounded. The uniform boundedness is not necessarily true in $C_i \times C_i$, but it holds if we use spherical coordinates near the diagonal Δ_i. To apply spherical coordinates in an intrinsic way, we recall blow-ups of real submanifolds:

Definition A.3 [58, Chapter 5] Let $p\colon E \to M$ be vector bundle over a manifold. Then the blow-up of E along M is the manifold

$$\mathrm{Bl}_M E = \{(v, e) \in E \times S(E) \mid p(v) = p(e) \text{ and } ae = v \text{ for some } a \geq 0\},$$

where $S(E)$ is the sphere bundle $(E \backslash \{0_M\})/\mathbb{R}^+$, and 0_M is the zero section of $E \to M$.

Then one can define a blow-up of a submanifold $N \subset M$ in the sense of Definition 2.2 by blowing up N in the tubular neighborhood which is identified with the normal bundle. Moreover, the blow-up of the submanifold N can be described intrinsically as

$$\mathrm{Bl}_N M := (M \backslash N) \cup S(TM/TN|_N),$$

where $S(TM/TN|_N)$ is the sphere bundle of the quotient bundle (normal bundle) $TM/TN|_N$ over N. The smooth structure on $\mathrm{Bl}_N M$ can be given using an auxiliary tubular neighborhood and it is independent of
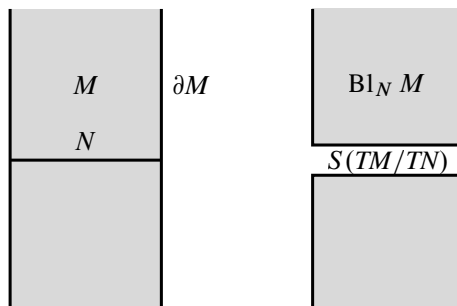
Figure 6: Blowing up one submanifold.
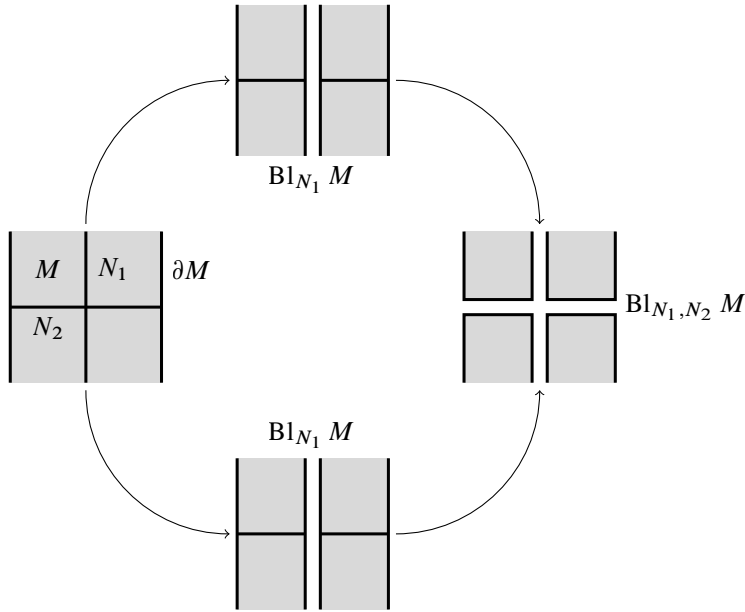
Figure 7: Blowing up two submanifolds.

the tubular neighborhood [58, Chapter 5]. The natural map $\mathrm{Bl}_N M \to M$ is smooth and is a diffeomorphism up to measure-zero sets. Thom classes $\delta_i^n = \mathrm{d}(\rho_n \psi_i)$ can be pulled back to $\mathrm{Bl}_{\Delta_i} C_i \times C_i$, and the primitives $\rho_n \psi_i$ are uniformly bounded on $\mathrm{Bl}_{\Delta_i} C_i \times C_i$.

Using this intrinsic description, when a smooth map $f : M \times N \to C \times C$ is transverse to the diagonal Δ, there is a natural map $\mathrm{Bl}_\Delta f : \mathrm{Bl}_{M \times_C N} M \times N \to \mathrm{Bl}_{\Delta_C} C \times C$ induced by $f : M \times N \to C \times C$. Moreover, we have the following commutative diagram of smooth maps:

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathrm{Bl}_{M \times_C N} M \times N & \xrightarrow{\mathrm{Bl}_\Delta f} & \mathrm{Bl}_{\Delta_C} C \times C \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
M \times N & \xrightarrow{\quad f \quad} & C \times C
\end{array}
$$

If we have two submanifolds N_1 and N_2 of M such that N_1 is transverse to N_2 in the sense of Definition 2.4, then we can blow up N_1 and N_2. It was shown in [58, Chapter 5] that the order of blowing up does not influence the diffeomorphism type. The resulting blow-up is denoted by $\mathrm{Bl}_{N_1,N_2} M$. Similarly, if we have a sequence of submanifolds $N_1, N_2, \ldots, N_k$ such that $\left(\bigcap_{\alpha \in A} N_\alpha \right)$ is transverse to N_β for $\beta \notin A$, then we can blow up all $N_1, \ldots, N_k$. The diffeomorphism type does not depend on the order; let $\mathrm{Bl}_{N_1,\ldots,N_k} M$ denote the blow-up.

In the setting of a flow category (Definition 2.9), any fiber product $\mathcal{M}_{i_0,i_1} \times_{i_1} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,i_2} \times_{i_2} \cdots \times_{i_n} \mathcal{M}_{i_n,i_{n+1}}$ is cut out transversely in $\mathcal{M}_{i_0,i_1} \times \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\iota_2} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{M}_{i_n,i_{n+1}}$. Therefore

$$
N_j := \mathcal{M}_{i_0,i_1} \times \mathcal{M}_{i_1,i_2} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{M}_{i_{j-1},i_j} \times_{i_j} \mathcal{M}_{i_j,i_{j+1}} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{M}_{i_n,i_{n+1}}
$$

are submanifolds in the product $\mathcal{M}_{i_0,i_1} \times \mathcal{M}_{i_1,i_2} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{M}_{i_n,i_{n+1}}$ such that $\left(\bigcap_{\alpha \in A} N_\alpha \right)$ is transverse to N_β for $\beta \notin A$. Then we have a blow-up $\mathrm{Bl}_n := \mathrm{Bl}_{N_1,\ldots,N_n} \mathcal{M}_{i_0,i_1} \times \mathcal{M}_{i_1,i_2} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{M}_{i_n,i_{n+1}}$ and a similar commutative diagram of smooth maps

(A-4)

$$
\begin{array}{ccc}
\mathrm{Bl}_n & \xrightarrow{\ \mathrm{Bl}_{\Delta_i}(t \times s)\ } & \mathrm{Bl}_{\Delta_{i_j}} C_{i_j} \times C_{i_j} \\
\downarrow & & \downarrow \\
\mathcal{M}_{i_0,i_1} \times \mathcal{M}_{i_1,i_2} \times \cdots \times \mathcal{M}_{i_n,i_{n+1}} & \xrightarrow{\ t \times s\ } & C_{i_j} \times C_{i_j}
\end{array}
$$

Now we start to prove Lemmas 3.7 and 3.14. The definition of $\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{s,k}[\alpha, f_{s+i_1}^{n_1}, \ldots, f_{s+i_r}^{n_r}, \gamma]$ is (3-10).

Lemma A.4 (Lemma 3.7) *For every $\alpha \in \Omega^*(C_v)$ and $\gamma \in \Omega^*(C_{v+k})$, and any defining data Θ, $\lim_{n \to \infty} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma]$ exists.*

Proof Since $\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^{n_1}, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^{n_r}, \gamma]$ is an integration over $\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}$, and $\bigcup_j \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_j,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}$ is a measure-zero set in $\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}$, we can restrict the integral to

$$
\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k} - \bigcup_j \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_j,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}
$$

to get the same value.

We have a blow-up $\mathrm{Bl}_r \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}$ by blowing up all $\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_j,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}$ for $1 \le j \le r$. The primitives f_i^n can be lifted to $\mathrm{Bl}_{\Delta_i} C_i \times C_i$ and $t \times s$ can be lifted to the blow-ups to $\mathrm{Bl}_{\Delta_i}(t \times s)$. We define $\mathrm{Bl}_r \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^{n_1}, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^{n_r}, \gamma]$ to be the result of integrating the wedge product of pullbacks of $\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^{n_1}, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^{n_r}, \gamma$ to $\mathrm{Bl}_r \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}$. Because $\mathrm{Bl}_r \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}$ and $\mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k} - \bigcup_j \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_j,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}$ also differ by a measure-zero set, by the commutative diagram (A-4),

$$
\mathrm{Bl}_r \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma] = \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma].
$$

Then

(A-5) $\quad \mathrm{Bl}_r \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma] - \mathrm{Bl}_r \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^m, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^m, \gamma]$

$$
= \sum_{p=1}^r \mathrm{Bl}_r \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^m, \ldots, f_{v+i_{p-1}}^m, f_{v+i_p}^n - f_{v+i_p}^m, f_{v+i_{p+1}}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma].
$$

Note that the $f_{v+i_j}^n$ are uniformly bounded over $\mathrm{Bl}_{\Delta_{v+i_j}} C_{v+i_j} \times C_{v+i_j}$ for every $n \in \mathbb{N}$, and the support of $f_{v+i_j}^n - f_{v+i_j}^m$ converges to a measure-zero set in $\mathrm{Bl}_{\Delta_{v+i_j}} C_{v+i_j} \times C_{v+i_j}$ when $n, m \to \infty$. By (A-4), the pullbacks of $f_{v+i_j}^n$ to $\mathrm{Bl}_r \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}$ have the same properties. Thus (A-5) implies the convergence. $\qquad\square$

Lemma A.5 (Lemma 3.14) *For an oriented flow category $\mathcal{C}$ and any defining data, we have*

$$
\lim_{n \to \infty} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, \delta_{v+i_p}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma]
$$

$$
= (-1)^* \lim_{n \to \infty} \mathcal{M}_{i_1,\ldots,i_{p-1},\bar{i}_p,i_{p+1},\ldots,i_r}^{v,k}[\alpha, f_{v+i_1}^n, \ldots, f_{v+i_r}^n, \gamma],
$$

where $* = (|\alpha| + m_{v,v+i_p})c_{v+i_p}$.
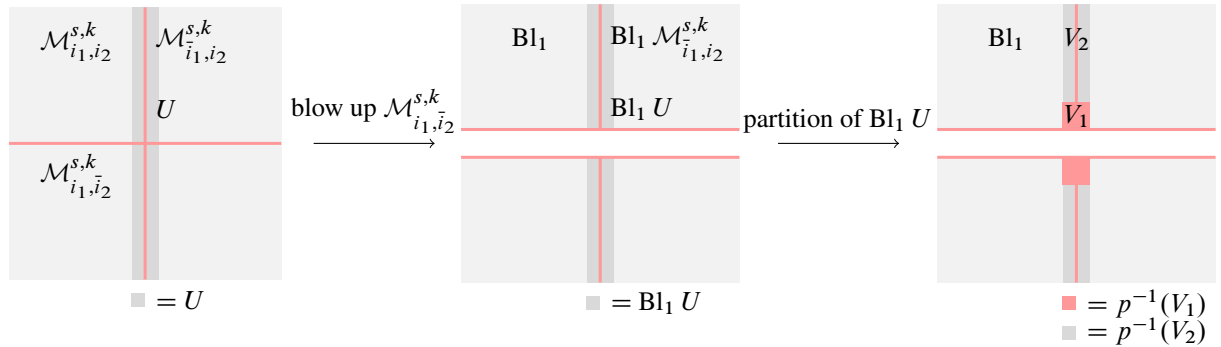
Figure 8: The $r = 2$, $p = 1$ case.

Proof The limit $\lim_{n\to\infty} \mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_{p-1},\bar{i}_p,i_{p+1},\ldots,i_r}[\alpha, f^n_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f^n_{v+i_r}, \gamma]$ exists by the same argument used in the proof of Lemma A.4. To prove the limit on the left-hand side exists, we can blow up everything except for $\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_p,\ldots,i_r}$ to get Bl_{r-1}. Assume that the pullback of $\delta^n_{v+i_p}$ is supported in the tubular neighborhood U of $\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_p,\ldots,i_r}$ in $\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}$. Then U can be lifted to the blow-up Bl_{r-1} to get $\mathrm{Bl}_{r-1} U$ (see Figure 7). For simplicity, we suppress the wedge and pullback notation. Then we have

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \int_{\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}} \alpha f^n_{v+i_1} \cdots \delta^n_{v+i_p} \cdots f^n_{v+i_r} \gamma = \lim_{n\to\infty} \int_{\mathrm{Bl}_{r-1} U} \alpha f^n_{v+i_1} \cdots \delta^n_{v+i_p} \cdots f^n_{v+i_r} \gamma.$$

Let $\mathrm{Bl}_{r-1} \mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_p,\ldots,i_r}$ denote the lift of $\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_p,\ldots,i_r}$ in Bl_{r-1}. Then $\mathrm{Bl}_{r-1} U$ is still a tubular neighborhood of $\mathrm{Bl}_{r-1} \mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_p,\ldots,i_r}$. Let $p \colon \mathrm{Bl}_{r-1} U \to \mathrm{Bl}_{r-1} \mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_p,\ldots,i_r}$ denote the projection of the tubular neighborhood. Then we can divide $\mathrm{Bl}_{r-1} \mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_p,\ldots,i_r}$ into two parts, V_1 and V_2, such that V_1 is a small open set containing the blow-up domain, and V_2 is the complement. Then $p^{-1}(V_1)$ and $p^{-1}(V_2)$ are partitions of $\mathrm{Bl}_{r-1} U$ (see Figure 8). Using the same local coordinates as in Lemma A.2, if we integrate the fiber direction of the tubular neighborhood, because $f^n_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f^n_{v+i_{p-1}}, f^n_{v+i_{p+1}}, \ldots, f^n_{v+i_r}$ are uniformly bounded over Bl_{r-1}, we have

$$\text{(A-6)} \qquad \left| \int_{p^{-1}(V_1)} \alpha f^n_{v+i_1} \cdots \delta^n_{v+i_p} \cdots f^n_{v+i_r} \gamma \right| \leq K \operatorname{vol}(V_1),$$

where K is a constant. Over $p^{-1}(V_2)$, the pullbacks of $f^n_{v+i_1}, \ldots, f^n_{v+i_{p-1}}, f^n_{v+i_{p+1}}, \ldots, f^n_{v+i_r}$ do not change for n large enough, because $p^{-1}(V_2)$ stays away from the blown-up area. Thus the only thing that varies over $p^{-1}(V_2)$ is $\delta^n_{v+i_p}$. Note that

$$\lim_{n\to\infty} \int_{p^{-1}(V_2)} \alpha f^n_{v+i_1} \cdots \delta^n_{v+i_p} \cdots f^n_{v+i_r} \gamma$$
$$= (-1)^{(|\alpha|+\sum_{j<p}(c_{v+i_j}-1))c_{v+i_p}} \lim_{n\to\infty} \int_{p^{-1}(V_2)} \delta^n_{v+i_p} \alpha f^n_{v+i_1} \cdots f^n_{v+i_r}.$$

By Definition 2.15, the orientation relation on $\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_p,\ldots,i_r} \supset V_2$ satisfies

$$[N_{v+i_p}][\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,\bar{i}_p,\ldots,i_r}] = (-1)^{\left(\sum_{j\leq p} m_{v+i_{j-1},v+i_j}\right)\cdot c_{v+i_p}} [\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\ldots,i_r}]$$

Combining with Lemma A.2 and

$$\left(|\alpha| + \sum_{j<p}(c_{v+i_j}-1)\right)c_{v+i_p} + \left(\sum_{j\leq p} m_{v+i_{j-1},v+i_j}\right)c_{v+i_p} = (|\alpha|+m_{v,v+i_p})c_{v+i_p} \quad \text{mod } 2,$$

we can conclude that

$$
\text{(A-7)} \quad \lim_{n \to \infty} \int_{p^{-1}(V_2)} \alpha f^n_{v+i_1} \cdots \delta^n_{v+i_p} \cdots f^n_{v+i_r} \gamma
$$
$$
= \lim_{n \to \infty} (-1)^{(|\alpha|+m_{v,v+i_p})c_{v+i_p}} \int_{V_2} \alpha f^n_{v+i_1} \cdots f^n_{v+i_{p-1}} f^n_{v+i_{p+1}} \cdots f^n_{v+i_r} \gamma.
$$

By (A-6) and (A-7), since V_1 can be arbitrarily small, $\lim_{n \to \infty} \mathcal{M}^{s,k}_{i_1,\dots,i_r}[\alpha, f^n_{v+i_1}, \dots, \delta^n_{v+i_p}, \dots, f^n_{v+i_r}, \gamma]$ exists. Since $f^n_{v+i_1}, \dots, f^n_{v+i_{p-1}}, f^n_{v+i_{p+1}}, \dots, f^n_{v+i_r}$ are uniformly bounded over $\mathrm{Bl}_{r-1} \mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\dots,\bar{i}_p,\dots,i_r}$,

$$
\text{(A-8)} \quad \left| \int_{V_1} \alpha f^n_{v+i_1} \cdots f^n_{v+i_{p-1}} f^n_{v+i_{p+1}} \cdots f^n_{v+i_r} \gamma \right| < K' \operatorname{vol}(V_1).
$$

Since $\mathrm{Bl}_{r-1} \mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\dots,\bar{i}_p,\dots,i_r}$ and $\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\dots,\bar{i}_p,\dots,i_r}$ differ by a measure-zero set,

$$
\text{(A-9)} \quad \int_{\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\dots,\bar{i}_p,\dots,i_r}} \alpha f^n_{v+i_1} \cdots f^n_{v+i_{p-1}} f^n_{v+i_{p+1}} \cdots f^n_{v+i_r} \gamma
$$
$$
= \int_{\mathrm{Bl}_{r-1} \mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\dots,\bar{i}_p,\dots,i_r}} \alpha f^n_{v+i_1} \cdots f^n_{v+i_{p-1}} f^n_{v+i_{p+1}} \cdots f^n_{v+i_r} \gamma
$$
$$
= \int_{V_1 \cup V_2} \alpha f^n_{v+i_1} \cdots f^n_{v+i_{p-1}} f^n_{v+i_{p+1}} \cdots f^n_{v+i_r} \gamma.
$$

Therefore by (A-6), (A-7), (A-8) and (A-9),

$$
\left| \lim_{n \to \infty} \left(\int_{\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\dots,i_r}} \alpha f^n_{v+i_1} \cdots \delta^n_{v+i_p} \cdots f^n_{v+i_r} \gamma - (-1)^{(|\alpha|+m_{v,v+i_p})c_{s+i_p}} \int_{\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\dots,\bar{i}_p,\dots,i_r}} \alpha f^n_{v+i_1} \cdots f^n_{v+i_r} \gamma \right) \right|
$$
$$
\leq (K + K') \operatorname{vol}(V_1).
$$

Thus, since V_1 can be arbitrarily small,

$$
\lim_{n \to \infty} \int_{\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\dots,i_r}} \alpha f^n_{v+i_1} \cdots \delta^n_{v+i_p} \cdots f^n_{v+i_r} \gamma
$$
$$
= \lim_{n \to \infty} (-1)^{(|\alpha|+m_{v,v+i_p})c_{v+i_p}} \int_{\mathcal{M}^{v,k}_{i_1,\dots,\bar{i}_p,\dots,i_r}} \alpha f^n_{v+i_1} \cdots f^n_{v+i_r} \gamma. \quad \square
$$

Appendix B   Proof of Proposition 6.21

Proposition B.1 (Proposition 6.21) *Let $\pi \colon E \to C$ be an oriented k–sphere bundle over an oriented closed manifold. Let $A = A^*$ be the reduction on $\Omega^*(E)$ built from the discussion after the statement of Theorem 6.19 (in particular, we choose ψ_i such that $\mathrm{d}\psi_i = 0$ if k is even). Suppose T is the closed form in $\pi_1^* A \wedge \pi_2^* A$ representing the diagonal by the definition of reduction. Then there exist approximations $\delta^{E,n}$ of the Dirac current of the diagonal Δ_E such that:*

(1) *There exist forms $f^{E,n}$ on $E \times E$ such that*
$$
\mathrm{d} f^{E,n} = \delta^{E,n} - T.
$$

(2) *Lemmas 3.7 and 3.14 hold for $f^{E,n}$. In particular, the construction in Section 6.2 works for $f^{E,n}$.*

(3) Let $\pi_{1,2}$ denote the projection $E \times E \to C \times C$. Then $f^{E,n}$ can be written as sums of differential forms in the form $(\pi_{1,2}^* \alpha) \wedge \beta$ with $\alpha \in \Omega^*(C \times C)$ and $\deg(\beta) \leq k$ (the fiber degree of $f^{E,n}$ is at most k). In other words, if $v_1, \ldots, v_{k+1}$ are $k+1$ vertical vectors in $T_p(E \times E)$ for $p \in C \times C$, then $f^{E,n}(v_1 \wedge \cdots \wedge v_{k+1} \wedge \cdots) = 0$.

Proof Let $\delta^{C,n}$ be the Thom classes of $\Delta_C \subset C \times C$ constructed using (3-4) with the angular form Ψ_C of the normal bundle. Let $\delta^{S^k,n}$ be the Thom classes of $\Delta_E \subset E \times_C E$ constructed using (3-4). We define $p \colon U \to E \times_C E$ to be a projection in a tubular neighborhood U of $E \times_C E$ in $E \times E$. Then $\pi_{1,2}(U)$ is a tubular neighborhood of $\Delta_C \subset C \times C$. By the same argument as in Lemma 3.1, $\lim_{n \to \infty} \pi_{1,2}^* \delta^{C,n} \wedge p^* \delta^{S^k,n}$ is the Dirac current of the diagonal $\Delta_E \subset E \times E$. Since, for $n \gg 0$, the support of $\pi_{1,2}^* \delta^{C,n}$ is contained in U, the $\pi_{1,2}^* \delta^{C,n} \wedge p^* \delta^{S^k,n}$ are cohomologous to each other and represent Thom classes of Δ_E for $n \gg 0$.

Next, we show that we can find the desired primitives $f^{E,n}$. Let $p_1, p_2 \colon E \times_C E \to E$ be the projections to the first and second components, respectively. Then $(-1)^k p_1^* \psi + p_2^* \psi$ is a closed form on $E \times_C E$ because $d((-1)^k p_1^* \psi + p_2^* \psi) = (-1)^{k+1} q^* e - q^* e = 0$ for any k (when k is even, e is zero by assumption), where $q \colon E \times_C E \to C$ is the projection. We claim $(-1)^k p_1^* \psi + p_2^* \psi$ is cohomologous to $\delta^{S^k,n}$: there are $f^{S^k,n} \in \Omega^{k-1}(E \times_C E)$ such that

(B-1) $$\delta^{S^k,n} - (-1)^k p_1^* \psi - p_2^* \psi = d f^{S^k,n}.$$

We first proceed assuming (B-1). Let Π_1 and Π_2 be the two projections $E \times E \to E$. Note that $(-1)^k \Pi_1^* \psi + \Pi_2^* \psi$ is not closed on U. We have $d((-1)^k \Pi_1^* \psi + \Pi_2^* \Psi) = \pi_{1,2}^*((-1)^{k+1} e \otimes 1 - 1 \otimes e)$, and the closed form $(-1)^{k+1} e \otimes 1 - 1 \otimes e$ is zero on Δ_C. Hence $(-1)^{k+1} e \otimes 1 - 1 \otimes e$ is exact on $\pi_{1,2}(U)$. Therefore we can find $h \in \Omega^k(\pi_{1,2}(U))$ with $h|_{\Delta_C} = 0$ and $(-1)^k \Pi_1^* \psi + \Pi_2^* \Psi + \pi_{1,2}^* h$ is closed on U. Since $((-1)^k \Pi_1^* \psi + \Pi_2^* \psi + \pi_{1,2}^* h)|_{E \times_C E} = (-1)^k p_1^* \psi + p_2^* \psi$, we know that there exists $g \in \Omega^{k-1}(U)$ such that

$$p^*((-1)^k p_1^* \psi + p_2^* \psi) - (-1)^k \Pi_1^* \psi - \Pi_2^* \psi = dg + \pi_{1,2}^* h.$$

Now we make any extension of h to $C \times C$; the extended form is still denoted by h. We have

$$\pi_{1,2}^* \delta^{C,n} \wedge p^* \delta^{S^k,n} = \pi_{1,2}^* \delta^{C,n} \wedge p^*((-1)^k p_1^* \psi + p_2^* \psi) + \pi_{1,2}^* \delta^{C,n} \wedge p^* d f^{S^k,n}$$
$$= \pi_{1,2}^* \delta^{C,n} \wedge \big(((-1)^k \Pi_1^* \psi + \Pi_2^* \psi + \pi_{1,2}^* h) + \pi_{1,2}^* \delta^{C,n} \wedge (dg + p^* d f^{S^k,n}) \big).$$

If we write $d f^{C,n} = \delta^{C,n} - \sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_a \wedge \pi_2^* \theta_a^*$, then

$$\pi_{1,2}^* \delta^{C,n} \wedge ((-1)^k \Pi_1^* \psi + \Pi_2^* \psi + \pi_{1,2}^* h)$$
$$= \pi_{1,2}^*(d f^{C,n} + \sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_a \wedge \pi_2 \theta_a^*) \wedge ((-1)^k \Pi_1^* \psi + \Pi_2^* \psi + \pi_{1,2}^* h)$$
$$= d\big(\pi_{1,2}^* f^{C,n} \wedge ((-1)^k \Pi_1^* \psi + \Pi_2^* \psi + \pi_{1,2}^* h)\big) + \pi_{1,2}^*\Big(\sum_a \pi_1^* \theta_a \wedge \pi_2 \theta_a^*\Big) \wedge ((-1)^k \Pi_1^* \psi + \Pi_2^* \psi + \pi_{1,2}^* h)$$
$$+ (-1)^{\dim C} \pi_{1,2}^* f^{C,n} \wedge d((-1)^k \Pi_1^* \psi + \Pi_2^* \psi + \pi_{1,2}^* h).$$

Let S_n denote the last two terms. Then $S_n - S_m = 0$ for $n, m \gg 0$ as $\mathrm{supp}(f^{C,n} - f^{C,m}) \subset (\pi_{1,2})(U)$ and $\mathrm{d}((-1)^k \Pi_1^* \psi + \Pi_2^* \psi + \pi_{1,2}^* h)$ is zero on U.

Next, recall from Lemma 6.20 that $A = A^*$ has a basis of the form

$$\langle \pi^* \theta_1, \ldots, \pi^* \theta_k, \xi_1 := \pi^* \theta_1^* \wedge \psi - \pi^* \eta_1, \ldots, \xi_k := \pi^* \theta_k^* \wedge \psi - \pi^* \eta_k \rangle$$

such that the dual basis is $\langle \xi_1, \ldots, \xi_k, \pi^* \theta_1, \ldots, \pi^* \theta_k \rangle$, up to sign. It is easy to check that $S_n - T$ is in the form $\pi_{1,2}^* \alpha$ for $\alpha \in \Omega^*(C \times C)$. Since T and $\pi_{1,2}^* \delta^{C,n} \wedge p^* \delta^{S^k,n}$ both represent Δ_E, we have that $S_n - T$ is exact. Therefore α is a closed class in $\Omega^*(C \times C)$ such that $[\pi_{1,2}^* \alpha] = 0$. As a consequence, $[\alpha] = \sum_i ([\alpha_i] \wedge [e]) \otimes [\beta_i] + \sum_j [\alpha_j'] \otimes ([\beta_j'] \wedge [e])$ on cohomology. Therefore there exist $\alpha_0, \alpha_1, \alpha_2 \in \Omega^*(C \times C)$ such that

$$S_n - T = \pi_{1,2}^* \alpha = \mathrm{d}(\pi_{1,2}^* \alpha_0 \wedge \Pi_1^* \Psi + \pi_{1,2}^* \alpha_1 \wedge \Pi_2^* \Psi + \pi_{1,2}^* \alpha_2) = \mathrm{d} w.$$

So we can take $\delta^{E,n} := \pi_{1,2}^* \delta^{C,n} \wedge p^* \delta^{S^k,n}$ and

(B-2) $\quad f^{E,n} := w + f^{C,n} \wedge ((-1)^k \Pi_1^* \psi + \Pi_2^* \psi + \pi_{1,2}^* h) + (-1)^{\dim C} (\pi_1 \times \pi_2)^* \delta^{C,n} \wedge (g + p^* f^{S^k,n}).$

Since f_C^n and $f_{S^k}^n$ can be chosen so that (3-7) holds, Lemmas 3.7 and 3.14 hold for $f^{E,n}$ using the same argument as in Appendix A. By (B-2), the third property of the proposition holds, since each component has the property. $\qquad \square$

Proof of (B-1) Note that $p_1 \colon E \times_C E \to E$ is also a sphere bundle (it is the pullback of the bundle $\pi \colon E \to C$ through π itself). Then $p_2^* \psi$ is the angular form of p_1. After fixing representatives $\{\alpha_1, \ldots, \alpha_m\}$ of a basis of $H^*(E)$, we get a reduction of $\Omega^*(E \times_C E)$ by the same argument as the one after the statement of Theorem 6.19:

$$B = B^* = \langle p_1^* \alpha_1, \ldots, p_1^* \alpha_m, \chi_1 := p_1^* \alpha_1 \wedge p_2^* \psi - p_1^* f_1, \ldots, \chi_m := p_1^* \alpha_m \wedge p_2^* \psi - p_1^* f_m \rangle.$$

Since d is closed on B and the cohomology is the cohomology of $E \times_C E$ (since it is a reduction), it suffices to prove that, for any $\beta \in B$,

$$\int_{E \times_C E} \beta \wedge ((-1)^k p_1^* \psi + p_2^* \psi) = \int_{\Delta_E} \beta.$$

If $\beta = p_1^* \alpha_i$, then

$$\int_{E \times_C E} p_1^* \alpha_i \wedge ((-1)^k p_1^* \psi + p_2^* \psi) = \int_{E \times_C E} (-1)^k p_1^* (\alpha_i \wedge \psi) + \int_{E \times_C E} p_1^* \alpha_i \wedge p_2^* \psi.$$

The first term is clearly zero, and the second term is $\int_E \alpha_i = \int_{\Delta_E} (p_1^* \alpha_i)|_{\Delta_E}$ by integration along the fiber of p_1. If $\beta = \chi_i = p_1^* \alpha_i \wedge p_2^* \psi - p_1^* f_i$, then by the same argument as above, we have

$$\int_{E \times_C E} \chi_i \wedge ((-1)^k p_1^* \psi + p_2^* \psi) = \int_{E \times_C E} (p_1^* \alpha_i \wedge p_2^* \psi) \wedge ((-1)^k p_1^* \psi + p_2^* \psi) + \int_{\Delta_E} (p_1^* f_i)|_{\Delta_E}.$$

The first term is $\int_{E \times_C E} p_1^* \alpha_i \wedge p_1^* \psi \wedge p_2^* \psi = \int_E \alpha_i \wedge \psi = \int_{\Delta_E} (p_1^* \alpha_i \wedge p_2^* \psi)|_{\Delta_E}.$ $\qquad \square$

References

[1] **M Abouzaid**, *Symplectic cohomology and Viterbo's theorem*, from "Free loop spaces in geometry and topology" (J Latschev, A Oancea, editors), IRMA Lect. Math. Theor. Phys. 24, Eur. Math. Soc., Zürich (2015) 271–485 MR Zbl

[2] **M Audin**, **M Damian**, *Morse theory and Floer homology*, Springer (2014) MR Zbl

[3] **D M Austin**, **P J Braam**, *Morse–Bott theory and equivariant cohomology*, from "The Floer memorial volume" (H Hofer, C H Taubes, A Weinstein, E Zehnder, editors), Progr. Math. 133, Birkhäuser, Basel (1995) 123–183 MR Zbl

[4] **A Banyaga**, **D E Hurtubise**, *Morse–Bott homology*, Trans. Amer. Math. Soc. 362 (2010) 3997–4043 MR Zbl

[5] **A Banyaga**, **D E Hurtubise**, *Cascades and perturbed Morse–Bott functions*, Algebr. Geom. Topol. 13 (2013) 237–275 MR Zbl

[6] **J-F Barraud**, **O Cornea**, *Lagrangian intersections and the Serre spectral sequence*, Ann. of Math. 166 (2007) 657–722 MR Zbl

[7] **P Biran**, **O Cornea**, *A Lagrangian quantum homology*, from "New perspectives and challenges in symplectic field theory" (M Abreu, F Lalonde, L Polterovich, editors), CRM Proc. Lecture Notes 49, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI (2009) 1–44 MR Zbl

[8] **R Bott**, *Nondegenerate critical manifolds*, Ann. of Math. 60 (1954) 248–261 MR Zbl

[9] **R Bott**, *An application of the Morse theory to the topology of Lie-groups*, Bull. Soc. Math. France 84 (1956) 251–281 MR Zbl

[10] **R Bott**, **H Samelson**, *Applications of the theory of Morse to symmetric spaces*, Amer. J. Math. 80 (1958) 964–1029 MR Zbl

[11] **R Bott**, **L W Tu**, *Differential forms in algebraic topology*, Graduate Texts in Math. 82, Springer (1982) MR Zbl

[12] **F Bourgeois**, *A Morse–Bott approach to contact homology*, PhD thesis, Stanford University (2002) Available at https://www.proquest.com/docview/305591502

[13] **F Bourgeois**, **K Mohnke**, *Coherent orientations in symplectic field theory*, Math. Z. 248 (2004) 123–146 MR Zbl

[14] **F Bourgeois**, **A Oancea**, *An exact sequence for contact- and symplectic homology*, Invent. Math. 175 (2009) 611–680 MR Zbl Correction in 200 (2015) 1065–1076

[15] **F Bourgeois**, **A Oancea**, *Symplectic homology, autonomous Hamiltonians, and Morse–Bott moduli spaces*, Duke Math. J. 146 (2009) 71–174 MR Zbl

[16] **F Bourgeois**, **A Oancea**, *The Gysin exact sequence for S^1–equivariant symplectic homology*, J. Topol. Anal. 5 (2013) 361–407 MR Zbl

[17] **K Cieliebak**, **K Mohnke**, *Symplectic hypersurfaces and transversality in Gromov–Witten theory*, J. Symplectic Geom. 5 (2007) 281–356 MR Zbl

[18] **K Cieliebak**, **E Volkov**, *Chern–Simons theory and string topology*, preprint (2023) arXiv 2312.05922

[19] **R L Cohen**, **J D S Jones**, **G B Segal**, *Floer's infinite-dimensional Morse theory and homotopy theory*, from "The Floer memorial volume" (H Hofer, C H Taubes, A Weinstein, E Zehnder, editors), Progr. Math. 133, Birkhäuser, Basel (1995) 297–325 MR Zbl

[20] **L Diogo**, **S T Lisi**, *Morse–Bott split symplectic homology*, J. Fixed Point Theory Appl. 21 (2019) art. id. 77 MR Zbl

[21] **L Diogo**, **S T Lisi**, *Symplectic homology of complements of smooth divisors*, J. Topol. 12 (2019) 967–1030 MR Zbl

[22] **S Dostoglou**, **D A Salamon**, *Self-dual instantons and holomorphic curves*, Ann. of Math. 139 (1994) 581–640 MR Zbl

[23] **Y Eliashberg**, **A Givental**, **H Hofer**, *Introduction to symplectic field theory*, from "Visions in mathematics" (N Alon, J Bourgain, A Connes, M Gromov, V Milman, editors), volume 2, Birkhäuser (= GAFA special volume), Boston, MA (2000) 560–673 MR Zbl

[24] **O Fabert**, **J W Fish**, **R Golovko**, **K Wehrheim**, *Polyfolds: a first and second look*, EMS Surv. Math. Sci. 3 (2016) 131–208 MR Zbl

[25] **B Filippenko**, *Polyfold regularization of constrained moduli spaces*, J. Symplectic Geom. 19 (2021) 241–350 MR Zbl

[26] **J Fish**, **H Hofer**, *Applications of polyfold theory*, *II*: *The polyfolds of symplectic field theory*, in preparation

[27] **A Floer**, *An instanton-invariant for 3–manifolds*, Comm. Math. Phys. 118 (1988) 215–240 MR Zbl

[28] **A Floer**, *Morse theory for Lagrangian intersections*, J. Differential Geom. 28 (1988) 513–547 MR Zbl

[29] **A Floer**, *Symplectic fixed points and holomorphic spheres*, Comm. Math. Phys. 120 (1989) 575–611 MR Zbl

[30] **A Floer**, *Witten's complex and infinite-dimensional Morse theory*, J. Differential Geom. 30 (1989) 207–221 MR Zbl

[31] **A Floer**, **H Hofer**, *Coherent orientations for periodic orbit problems in symplectic geometry*, Math. Z. 212 (1993) 13–38 MR Zbl

[32] **U Frauenfelder**, *The Arnold–Givental conjecture and moment Floer homology*, Int. Math. Res. Not. 2004 (2004) 2179–2269 MR Zbl

[33] **K Fukaya**, *Floer homology of connected sum of homology 3–spheres*, Topology 35 (1996) 89–136 MR Zbl

[34] **K Fukaya**, **Y-G Oh**, **H Ohta**, **K Ono**, *Lagrangian intersection Floer theory: anomaly and obstruction, II*, AMS/IP Stud. Adv. Math. 46.2, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI (2009) MR Zbl

[35] **K Fukaya**, **Y-G Oh**, **H Ohta**, **K Ono**, *Kuranishi structure*, *pseudo-holomorphic curve*, *and virtual fundamental chain*, *I*, preprint (2015) arXiv 1503.07631

[36] **P Griffiths**, **J Harris**, *Principles of algebraic geometry*, Wiley, New York (1978) MR Zbl

[37] **M Gromov**, *Pseudo holomorphic curves in symplectic manifolds*, Invent. Math. 82 (1985) 307–347 MR Zbl

[38] **V W Guillemin**, **S Sternberg**, *Supersymmetry and equivariant de Rham theory*, Springer (1999) MR Zbl

[39] **F R Harvey**, **H B Lawson, Jr**, *Finite volume flows and Morse theory*, Ann. of Math. 153 (2001) 1–25 MR Zbl

[40] **H Hofer**, **K Wysocki**, **E Zehnder**, *A general Fredholm theory, I: A splicing-based differential geometry*, J. Eur. Math. Soc. 9 (2007) 841–876 MR Zbl

[41] **H Hofer**, **K Wysocki**, **E Zehnder**, *A general Fredholm theory, II: Implicit function theorems*, Geom. Funct. Anal. 19 (2009) 206–293 MR Zbl

[42]   **H Hofer**, **K Wysocki**, **E Zehnder**, *A general Fredholm theory, III: Fredholm functors and polyfolds*, Geom. Topol. 13 (2009) 2279–2387   MR   Zbl

[43]   **H Hofer**, **K Wysocki**, **E Zehnder**, *Integration theory on the zero sets of polyfold Fredholm sections*, Math. Ann. 346 (2010) 139–198   MR   Zbl

[44]   **H Hofer**, **K Wysocki**, **E Zehnder**, *Polyfold and Fredholm theory*, Ergebnisse der Math. 72, Springer (2021)   MR   Zbl

[45]   **D E Hurtubise**, *Multicomplexes and spectral sequences*, J. Algebra Appl. 9 (2010) 519–530   MR   Zbl

[46]   **E-N Ionel**, **T H Parker**, *A natural Gromov–Witten virtual fundamental class*, preprint (2013)   arXiv 1302.3472

[47]   **D Joyce**, *On manifolds with corners*, from "Advances in geometric analysis" (S Janeczko, J Li, D H Phong, editors), Adv. Lect. Math. 21, International, Somerville, MA (2012) 225–258   MR   Zbl

[48]   **D Joyce**, *A new definition of Kuranishi space*, preprint (2014)   arXiv 1409.6908

[49]   **M Kontsevich**, **Y Soibelman**, *Homological mirror symmetry and torus fibrations*, from "Symplectic geometry and mirror symmetry" (K Fukaya, Y-G Oh, K Ono, G Tian, editors), World Sci., River Edge, NJ (2001) 203–263   MR   Zbl

[50]   **P Kronheimer**, **T Mrowka**, *Monopoles and three-manifolds*, New Math. Monogr. 10, Cambridge Univ. Press (2007)   MR   Zbl

[51]   **J Latschev**, *Gradient flows of Morse–Bott functions*, Math. Ann. 318 (2000) 731–759   MR   Zbl

[52]   **J Li**, **G Tian**, *Virtual moduli cycles and Gromov–Witten invariants of general symplectic manifolds*, from "Topics in symplectic 4–manifolds" (R J Stern, editor), First Int. Press Lect. Ser. 1, International, Cambridge, MA (1998) 47–83   MR   Zbl

[53]   **F Lin**, *A Morse–Bott approach to monopole Floer homology and the triangulation conjecture*, Mem. Amer. Math. Soc. 1221, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI (2018)   MR   Zbl

[54]   **R Lipshitz**, **S Sarkar**, *A Khovanov stable homotopy type*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. 27 (2014) 983–1042   MR   Zbl

[55]   **J McCleary**, *User's guide to spectral sequences*, Math. Lect. Ser. 12, Publish or Perish, Wilmington, DE (1985)   MR   Zbl

[56]   **D McDuff**, **D Salamon**, *J–holomorphic curves and symplectic topology*, Amer. Math. Soc. Colloq. Publ. 52, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI (2004)   MR   Zbl

[57]   **D McDuff**, **K Wehrheim**, *Smooth Kuranishi atlases with isotropy*, Geom. Topol. 21 (2017) 2725–2809   MR   Zbl

[58]   **R Melrose**, *Differential analysis on manifolds with corners*, unpublished manuscript (1996)   Available at https://math.mit.edu/~rbm/book.html

[59]   **M Morse**, *The calculus of variations in the large*, Amer. Math. Soc. Colloq. Publ. 18, Amer. Math. Soc., Providence, RI (1932)

[60]   **D Murfet**, *Derived categories, I*, preprint (2006)   Available at http://therisingsea.org/notes/DerivedCategories.pdf

[61]   **L I Nicolaescu**, *An invitation to Morse theory*, Springer (2007)   MR   Zbl

[62]   **P Ozsváth**, **Z Szabó**, *Holomorphic disks and topological invariants for closed three-manifolds*, Ann. of Math. 159 (2004) 1027–1158   MR   Zbl

[63] **J Pardon**, *An algebraic approach to virtual fundamental cycles on moduli spaces of pseudo-holomorphic curves*, Geom. Topol. 20 (2016) 779–1034 MR Zbl

[64] **J Pardon**, *Contact homology and virtual fundamental cycles*, J. Amer. Math. Soc. 32 (2019) 825–919 MR Zbl

[65] **L Qin**, *On moduli spaces and CW structures arising from Morse theory on Hilbert manifolds*, J. Topol. Anal. 2 (2010) 469–526 MR Zbl

[66] **J Robbin**, **D Salamon**, *The Maslov index for paths*, Topology 32 (1993) 827–844 MR Zbl

[67] **Y Ruan**, **G Tian**, *A mathematical theory of quantum cohomology*, J. Differential Geom. 42 (1995) 259–367 MR Zbl

[68] **F Schmäschke**, *Floer homology of Lagrangians in clean intersection*, preprint (2016) arXiv 1606.05327

[69] **M Schwarz**, *Morse homology*, Progr. Math. 111, Birkhäuser, Basel (1993) MR Zbl

[70] **P Seidel**, *A biased view of symplectic cohomology*, from "Current developments in mathematics" (B Mazur, T Mrowka, W Schmid, R Stanley, S-T Yau, editors), International, Somerville, MA (2008) 211–253 MR Zbl

[71] **P Seidel**, *Fukaya categories and Picard–Lefschetz theory*, Eur. Math. Soc., Zürich (2008) MR Zbl

[72] **E G Sklyarenko**, *The Thom isomorphism for nonorientable bundles*, Fundam. Prikl. Mat. 9 (2003) 55–103 MR Zbl In Russian; translated in J. Math. Sci. 136 (2006) 4166–4200

[73] **K Wehrheim**, *Fredholm notions in scale calculus and Hamiltonian Floer theory* (2012) arXiv 1209.4040 To appear in J. Symplectic Geom.

[74] **K Wehrheim**, *Smooth structures on Morse trajectory spaces, featuring finite ends and associative gluing*, from "Proceedings of the Freedman Fest" (R Kirby, V Krushkal, Z Wang, editors), Geom. Topol. Monogr. 18, Geom. Topol. Publ., Coventry (2012) 369–450 MR Zbl

[75] **C A Weibel**, *An introduction to homological algebra*, Cambridge Stud. Adv. Math. 38, Cambridge Univ. Press (1994) MR Zbl

[76] **E Witten**, *Supersymmetry and Morse theory*, J. Differential Geom. 17 (1982) 661–692 MR Zbl

[77] **Z Zhou**, *Equivariant fundamental class and localization theorem*, in preparation

[78] **Z Zhou**, *Quotient theorems in polyfold theory and S^1–equivariant transversality*, Proc. Lond. Math. Soc. 121 (2020) 1337–1426 MR Zbl

[79] **Z Zhou**, *On the cohomology ring of symplectic fillings*, Algebr. Geom. Topol. 23 (2023) 1693–1724 MR Zbl

[80] **A Zinger**, *The determinant line bundle for Fredholm operators: construction, properties, and classification*, Math. Scand. 118 (2016) 203–268 MR Zbl

Morningside Center of Mathematics and Institute of Mathematics, Chinese Academy of Sciences
Beijing, China

zhyzhou@amss.ac.cn

Algebraic & Geometric Topology